VT8233

Version CE

V-LINK CLIENT
HIGHLY INTEGRATED
SOUTH BRIDGE

HIGH BANDWIDTH V-LINK CLIENT CONTROLLER
INTEGRATED FAST ETHERNET,
INTEGRATED DIRECT SOUND AC97 AUDIO,
ULTRADMA-100/66/33 MASTER MODE EIDE CONTROLLER,
SIX PORT USB CONTROLLER, KEYBOARD/MOUSE CONTROLLER,
RTC, LPC, SMBUS, SERIAL IRQ, PLUG AND PLAY, ACPI
AND PC99 COMPLIANT Enhanced Power Management

Revision 2.8
July 22, 2002

VIA TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

Copyright Notice:

VT8233, VT8233A, and VT8233C may only be used to identify products of VIA Technologies.

Disclaimer Notice:

No license is granted, implied or otherwise, under any patent or patent rights of VIA Technologies. VIA Technologies makes no warranties, implied or otherwise, in regard to this document and to the products described in this document. The information provided by this document is believed to be accurate and reliable to the publication date of this document. However, VIA Technologies assumes no responsibility for any errors in this document. Furthermore, VIA Technologies assumes no responsibility for the use or misuse of the information in this document and for any patent infringements that may arise from the use of this document. The information and product specifications within this document are subject to change at any time, without notice and without obligation to notify any person of such change.

Offices:

USA Office:
940 Mission Court
Fremont, CA 94539
USA
Tel: (510) 683-3300
Fax: (510) 683-3301 or (510) 687-4654
Web: http://www.viatech.com

Taipei Office:
8th Floor, No. 533
Chung-Cheng Road, Hsin-Tien
Taipei, Taiwan ROC
Tel: (886-2) 2218-5452
Fax: (886-2) 2218-5453
Web: http://www.via.com.tw

REVISION HISTORY

Document Release	Date	Revision	Initials
1.0	5/10/01	Initial external release (no change of content from internal revision 0.97)	DH
1.1	9/2/01	Added "Version CD" to Title and Header; Updated company address Changed polarity of INIT# signal; Removed external APIC support Updated pin descriptions for GPI[15:8], GPO[15:8] & note under GPO table Updated Func 0 and 2-6 registers; Moved APIC register summary table & registers	DH
2.0	9/2/01	Changed title page and page header to "Version CD/CE" Added changes for Version CE: GPIO Pin Descriptions and added VGATE, AGPBZ, VIDSEL, GHI functions KBC RxE0, E6-EB, APIC Rx1, 3 F0 Rx4D[7], 4E[4], 53, 5A, 78-7A, 80[7], E5[5-3]; PMIO Rx4C-4F, 54-57, 5C F1 Rx6[4], 9[2,0], 4E-4F, 50[27,19,11,3], 54[6-3]; F2-4 Rx4[2-1], 41[4], 48-49	DH
2.1	9/18/01	Removed "Preliminary" from document revision number Modified Overview to indicate both versions CD and CE available Changed Vlink to V-Link and VD[15-0] pin names to VAD[15-0] (15-8 reserved) Added pin descriptions for VGATE, AGPBZ#, VIDSEL, GHI#, VRDPSLP, CPUMISS, AOLGPI; Added strap pin description table; Fixed default pin states (GPI0-7, 9, 16-19, 30-31); Changed GPO8-15 to O instead of OD output type Updated Func 0 Rx41[6-0],42[3],49[1-0],54-57,59[0],6F[4],80[7],E4[6],E5[5-0] Updated PMIO Rx0[10],2[10],28[7],2A[7],34[1],40[2] Updated Func 1 Rx44[0], Func 2-4 Rx41[4],48[4], Func 5/6 Rx49, Func 6 Rx8	DH
2.2	10/2/01	Changed title from "CD/CE" to "CE" because data sheet covers both but is primarily for CE; Fixed typos in figure 1 block diagram & register descriptions Moved CPUMISS & AOLGPI pin descriptions; made misc edits to pin descriptions; removed descriptions for VGATE, AGPBZ#, VIDSEL, GHI#, VRDPSLP Updated PMIO Rx10[8-7], 5C[1]	DH
2.21	10/24/01	Corrected register summary table default values: KBC Rx8, APIC Rx1, F1 Rx54 Updated F0 Rx40[0], 49[6], 4D[4], 4E[4], 7B, 95[7], F1 Rx3C, 54[6,5,3], C4[1-0]	DH
2.3	11/12/01	Updated pin descriptions: APICD0/1, LREQ#, IORDY, GPI19/28/29, GPO1/2/9-15, SLPBTN#, RSMRST# and USBVCC Updated Keyboard Wakeup register names, init sequence, Port 2E Index description Updated / Added 2C-2F Sub Vendor ID and Sub Device ID registers to all Functions Fixed reg summary defaults for F0 Rx67, F1 Rx7-6, 53-50, 71, 79, F5 Rx8, LAN Rx2 Removed F0 Rx78-7B, 83, SMBIO Rx8[4], F, F2-4 Rx40[4,0], 41[4,3,0], 48[3-2, 49 Added F0 Rx70-73, F2-4 Rx42[4]; Updated F0 Rx4C[3-0], 4E[2-0], 52[1-0], 53[7], 67[2], 94[3-2], F1 Rx7-6, 9[3,1], 10-23 lsbs, 71[0], 79[0], F5 Rx8, LAN Rx2	DH
2.4	11/19/01	Updated Func 0 Rx40-7F, Func 1 Rx3C, 40-C7, Func 5/6 Rx40-7F, SGD/Codec I/O	DH
2.5	1/22/02	Updated logos and trademarks; Fixed PMIO Rx4[0] Updated Device 0 F0 Rx80-E7, PMIO Rx0-13,20-25,28-29,30-37,40,42,45,5C, F2-4 USB Rx2C-2F, 40-42, 48-49, 84 and Device 18 F0 LAN registers	DH
2.6	1/31/02	Fixed various typos and document formatting errors: Fixed pin types in pin lists; Fixed alternate functions of pins SDA2-0, LREQ#, IORDY, and SLP# Changed signal names of VLVREF, VLCOMP, CPUMISS to match VT8235L Edited electrical specification tables to match VT8233A and VT8235L table format	DH
2.61	2/13/02	Fixed minor spelling and formatting errors; Fixed Func 0 Rx80[6]	DH
2.7	2/26/02	Fixed APIC "I/O Redirection Table Entry" format when bits 10-8 = 001b Updated Function 0 Rx8, PMIO Rx10[7], 24[14], 5C[1]	DH
2.71	5/8/02	Updated VIA USA street address on legal page; fixed typo in SMB I/O regs header	DH
2.8	7/22/02	Added SDCS1# pin strap & note on GPO26/27; Updated USB F2-4 Rx3D & fig 4	DH

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LIST OF FIGURES

LIST OF TABLES

VT8233
VERSION CE
V-LINK CLIENT HIGHLY INTEGRATED SOUTH BRIDGE

HIGH BANDWIDTH V-LINK CLIENT CONTROLLER
INTEGRATED FAST ETHERNET
INTEGRATED DIRECT SOUND AC97 AUDIO,
ULTRADMA-100/66/33 MASTER MODE EIDE CONTROLLER,
SIX PORT USB CONTROLLER, KEYBOARD CONTROLLER, RTC,
LPC, SMBUS, SERIAL IRQ, PLUG AND PLAY, ACPI,
AND PC99 COMPLIANT ENHANCED POWER MANAGEMENT

PRODUCT FEATURES

- **Inter-operable with VIA Host-to-V-Link Host Controller**
  - Combine with VT8753A (Apollo P4X266A) for a complete 533 / 400 MHz FSB Pentium 4 system
  - Combine with VT8633 (Apollo Pro266) for a complete 133 / 100 MHz FSB Pentium 3 / VIA C3 Socket-370 system
  - Combine with VT8366 (Apollo KT266) for a complete 266 / 200 MHz FSB Athlon / Duron Socket-A system
  - May be used interchangably with the VT8233C South Bridge in most board designs †
- **High Bandwidth 266 MB/S 8-bit V-Link Client Controller**
  - Supports 66 MHz V-Link Client interface with peak bandwidth of 266 MB/S
  - V-Link operates in 2X or 4X modes
  - Full duplex commands with separate Strobe / Command
  - Request / Data split transaction
  - Configurable outstanding transaction queue for V-Link Client accesses
  - Auto Client Retry to eliminate V-Link Host-Client Retry cycles
  - Intelligent V-Link transaction protocol to eliminate data wait-state / throttle transfer latency; all V-Link transactions for both Host and Client have a consistent view of transaction data depth and buffer size to avoid data overflow.
  - Highly efficient V-Link arbitration with minimum overhead; all V-Link transactions have predictable cycle length with known Command / Data duration
  - Auto connect / reconnect capability for minimum power consumption
- **Integrated Peripheral Controllers**
  - Integrated Fast Ethernet Controller with 1 / 10 / 100 Mbit capability
  - Integrated USB Controller with three root hub and six function ports
  - Dual channel UltraDMA-100 / 66 / 33 master mode EIDE controller
  - AC-link interface for AC-97 audio codec and modem codec
  - HSP modem support
  - Integrated DirectSound compatible digital audio controller
  - LPC interface for Low Pin Count interface to Super-I/O or ROM
- **Integrated Legacy Functions**
  - Integrated Keyboard Controller with PS2 mouse support
  - Integrated DS12885-style Real Time Clock with extended 256 byte CMOS RAM and Day/Month Alarm for ACPI
  - Integrated DMA, timer, and interrupt controller
  - Serial IRQ for docking and non-docking applications
  - Fast reset and Gate A20 operation

† Some general purpose I/O pin definitions are different - see Overview for list of differences between the VT8233 and VT8233C.

- **Concurrent PCI Bus Controller**
  - 33 MHz operation
  - Supports up to five PCI masters
  - Peer concurrency
  - Concurrent multiple PCI master transactions; i.e., allow PCI masters from both PCI buses active at the same time
  - Zero wait state PCI master and slave burst transfer rate
  - PCI to system memory data streaming up to 132Mbyte/sec (data sent to north bridge via high speed V-Link Interface)
  - PCI master snoop ahead and snoop filtering
  - Eight DW of CPU to PCI posted write buffers
  - Byte merging in the write buffers to reduce the number of PCI cycles and to create further PCI bursting possibilities
  - Enhanced PCI command optimization (MRL, MRM, MWI, etc.)
  - Four lines of post write buffers from PCI masters to DRAM
  - Sixteen levels (double-words) of prefetch buffers from DRAM for access by PCI masters
  - Delay transaction from PCI master accessing DRAM
  - Transaction timer for fair arbitration between PCI masters (granularity of two PCI clocks)
  - Symmetric arbitration between Host/PCI bus for optimized system performance
  - Complete steerable PCI interrupts
  - PCI-2.2 compliant, 32 bit 3.3V PCI interface with 5V tolerant inputs
- **Fast Ethernet Controller**
  - High performance PCI master interface with scatter / gather and bursting capability
  - Standard MII interface to external PHYceiver
  - 1 / 10 / 100 MHz full and half duplex operation
  - Independent 2K byte FIFOs for receive and transmit
  - Flexible dynamically loadable EEPROM algorithm
  - Physical, Broadcast, and Multicast address filtering using hashing function
  - Magic packet and wake-on-address filtering
  - Software controllable power down
- **UltraDMA-100 / 66 / 33 Master Mode EIDE Controller**
  - Dual channel master mode hard disk controller supporting four Enhanced IDE devices
  - Transfer rate up to 33MB/sec to cover PIO mode 4, multi-word DMA mode 2 drives, and UltraDMA-33 interface
  - Increased reliability using UltraDMA-100/66 transfer protocols
  - Thirty-two levels (doublewords) of prefetch and write buffers
  - Dual DMA engine for concurrent dual channel operation
  - Bus master programming interface for SFF-8038i rev.1.0 and Windows-95 compliant
  - Full scatter gather capability
  - Support ATAPI compliant devices including DVD devices
  - Support PCI native and ATA compatibility modes
  - Complete software driver support
- **Direct Sound Ready AC97 Digital Audio Controller**
  - AC-Link access to 4 CODECs (AC97 + AMC97 + MC97)
  - Multichannel Audio
  - Bus Master Scatter / Gather DMA
  - Dedicated read and write channels supporting simultaneous stereo playback and record
  - Dedicated read and write channels supporting simultaneous modem receive and transmit
  - 4 stereo DirectSound channels with source / volume control / mixer
  - 1 dedicated channel supporting multi-channel audio
  - 32-byte line-bufers for each SGD channel
  - Programmable 8bit / 16bit mono / stereo PCM data format support
  - AC97 2.1 compliant

- **System Management Bus Interface**
  - Host interface for processor communications
  - Slave interface for external SMBus masters
- **Universal Serial Bus Controller**
  - USB v.1.1 and Universal Host Controller Interface (UHCI) v.1.1 compatible
  - Eighteen level (doublewords) data FIFO with full scatter and gather capability
  - Root hub and six function ports
  - Integrated physical layer transceivers with optional over-current detection status on USB inputs
  - Legacy keyboard and PS/2 mouse support
- **Sophisticated PC99-Compatible Mobile Power Management**
  - Supports both ACPI (Advanced Configuration and Power Interface) and legacy (APM) power management
  - ACPI v1.0 Compliant
  - APM v1.2 Compliant
  - CPU clock throttling and clock stop control for complete ACPI C0 to C3 state support
  - PCI bus clock run, Power Management Enable (PME) control, and PCI/CPU clock generator stop control
  - Supports multiple system suspend types: power-on suspends with flexible CPU/PCI bus reset options, suspend to DRAM, and suspend to disk (soft-off), all with hardware automatic wake-up
  - Multiple suspend power plane controls and suspend status indicators
  - One idle timer, one peripheral timer and one general purpose timer, plus 24/32-bit ACPI compliant timer
  - Normal, doze, sleep, suspend and conserve modes
  - Global and local device power control
  - System event monitoring with two event classes
  - Primary and secondary interrupt differentiation for individual channels
  - Dedicated input pins for power and sleep buttons, external modem ring indicator, and notebook lid open/close for system wake-up
  - 32 general purpose input ports and 32 output ports
  - Multiple internal and external SMI sources for flexible power management models
  - Enhanced integrated real time clock (RTC) with date alarm, month alarm, and century field
  - Thermal alarm on external temperature sensing circuit
  - I/O pad leakage control
- **Plug and Play Controller**
  - PCI interrupts steerable to any interrupt channel
  - Steerable interrupts for integrated peripheral controllers: USB, floppy, serial, parallel, and audio
  - Microsoft Windows 98™, Windows NT™, Windows 95™ and plug and play BIOS compliant
- **Built-in NAND-tree pin scan test capability**
- **0.22um, 2.5V, low power CMOS process**
- **Single chip 27x27 mm, 376 pin BGA**

OVERVIEW

The VT8233 South Bridge is a high integration, high performance, power-efficient, and high compatibility device that supports Intel and non-Intel based processor to V-Link bus bridge functionality to make a complete Microsoft PC99-compliant PCI / LPC system. In addition to ISA extension bus functionality, the VT8233 includes standard intelligent peripheral controllers:

a) IEEE 802.3 compliant 10 / 100 Mbps PCI bus master Ethernet MAC with standard MII interface to external PHYceiver.

b) Master mode enhanced IDE controller with dual channel DMA engine and interlaced dual channel commands. Dedicated FIFO coupled with scatter and gather master mode operation allows high performance transfers between PCI and IDE devices. In addition to standard PIO and DMA mode operation, the VT8233 also supports the UltraDMA-33 standard to allow reliable data transfer rates up to 33 MB/sec throughput. The VT8233 also supports the UltraDMA-100 & UltraDMA-66 standards. The IDE controller is SFF-8038i v1.0 and Microsoft Windows-family compliant.

c) Universal Serial Bus controller that is USB v1.1 and Universal HCI v1.1 compliant. The VT8233 includes three root hubs with six function ports with integrated physical layer transceivers. The USB controller allows hot plug and play and isochronous peripherals to be inserted into the system with universal driver support. The controller also implements legacy keyboard and mouse support so that legacy software can run transparently in a non-USB-aware operating system environment.

d) Keyboard controller with PS2 mouse support.

e) Real Time Clock with 256 byte extended CMOS. In addition to the standard ISA RTC functionality, the integrated RTC also includes the date alarm, century field, and other enhancements for compatibility with the ACPI standard.

f) Notebook-class power management functionality compliant with ACPI and legacy APM requirements. Multiple sleep states (power-on suspend, suspend-to-DRAM, and suspend-to-Disk) are supported with hardware automatic wake-up. Additional functionality includes event monitoring, CPU clock throttling and stop (Intel processor protocol), PCI bus clock stop control, modular power, clock and leakage control, hardware-based and software-based event handling, general purpose I/O, chip select and external SMI.

g) Full System Management Bus (SMBus) interface.

h) Integrated bus-mastering dual full-duplex direct-sound AC97-link-compatible sound system.

i) Plug and Play controller that allows complete steerability of all PCI interrupts and internal interrupts / DMA channels to any interrupt channel. One additional steerable interrupt channel is provided to allow plug and play and reconfigurability of on-board peripherals for Windows family compliance.

The VT8233 also enhances the functionality of the standard ISA peripherals. The integrated interrupt controller supports both edge and level triggered interrupts channel by channel. The integrated DMA controller supports type F DMA in addition to standard ISA DMA modes. Compliant with the PCI-2.2 specification, the VT8233 supports delayed transactions and remote power management so that slower ISA peripherals do not block the traffic of the PCI bus. Special circuitry is built in to allow concurrent operation without causing dead lock even in a PCI-to-PCI bridge environment. The chip also includes eight levels (doublewords) of line buffers from the PCI bus to the ISA bus to further enhance overall system performance.

Differences Between the VT8233 (Versions CD and CE) and VT8233C

There are two "flavors" of the VT8233 South Bridge available from VIA: the VT8233 (described by this document) and the VT8233C (described in a separate data sheet). These two parts have similar base functionality and can be used (as long as certain rules are followed) interchangeably in the same board designs, but implement diffferent LAN subsystems on-chip. The VT8233C integrates a 3Com LAN subsystem and the VT8233 integrates a VIA LAN subsystem. Pinouts of the two parts are identical except for some General Purpose I/O pins: in the VT8233C, GPIO 8-15 pin functions are not available as these pins were redefined as external PHY control, MAC clock, and alert input functions. Also, in the VT8233C, SMB port 2 is dedicated for use with the 3Com LAN subsystem, so GPIO functions on those pins available in the VT8233 were removed in the VT8233C. So designs that are intended to allow alternate use of either part should take these differences into account.

In addition, there are two versions of the VT8233: version CD and version CE. This data sheet is primarily for the CE version but actually describes both versions with differences between the two versions noted wherever they are different. There is a separate data sheet describing version CD only that can be used as a reference for older designs. For information regarding how to identify CD or CE parts, refer to the marking specifications on the last page of this document.

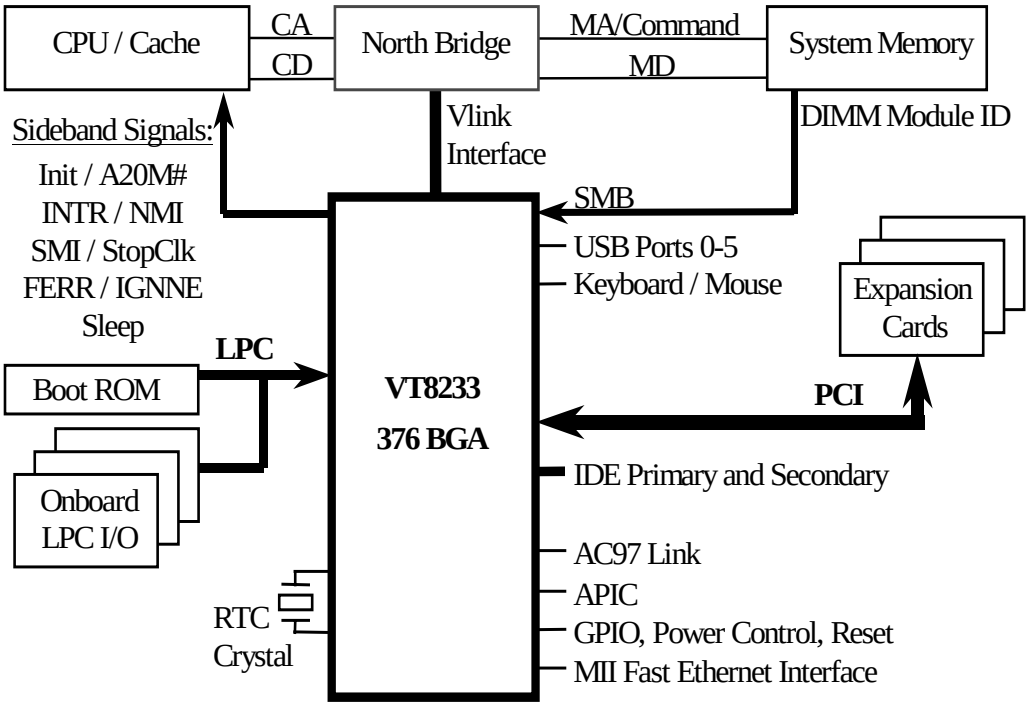


Figure 1. PC System Configuration Using the VT8233

PINOUTS

Pin Diagram

Figure 2. VT8233 Ball Diagram (Top View)

Key	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
A	VCC 33	CBE 0#	SERR#	T RDY#	CBE 2#	AD18	GPIO 8	GPIO 14	GPIO 11	VCC 33	MRX D1	MTX D1	EE CS#	EE DO	USB P4+	USB P4-	USB P2+	USB P3+	USB P0+	VCC 25
B	VCC 33	AD8	AD9	DEV SEL#	FRM#	AD17	GPIO 10	GPIO 15	GPIO 13	MRX D3	MRX ERR	MTX D0	EE CK	USB OC5#	USB OC2#	USB P5-	USB P2-	USB P1-	USB P0-	VCC 25
C	AD4	AD6	AD7	AD10	I RDY#	AD16	AD19	GPIO9 VRDS	GPIO 12	MRX D2	MTX ENA	MTX D2	EE DI	USB OC3#	USB OC1#	USB P5+	USB P3-	VAD 8	VAD 12	VAD 0
D	AD0	AD2	AD5	AD13	STOP#	GNT 4#	GNT 0#	REQ 1#	MD IO	MD CK	MRX CK	MTX D3	M COL	USB OC4#	USB OC0#	VCC 33	USB P1+	VAD 11	VAD 9	VAD 1
E	AD21	AD1	AD3	AD11	CBE 1#	PAR	REQ 4#	GNT 1#	RAM VCC	MRX D0	MRX DV	MTX CK	M CRS	USB GND	USB GND	USB CLK	VAD 3	VAD 5	V BE0#	UP CMD
F	AD23	AD22	AD20	AD12	AD14	AD15	VCC 33	REQ 0#	RAM GND	MII VCC	MII VCC	MII VCC	MII VCC	USB VCC	USB VCC	GND	UP STB	UP STB#	DN STB	DN STB#
G	AD25	AD24	CBE 3#	REQ 3#	INT A#	GND	VCC 33	VCC	GND	GND	VCC 33	GND	VCC	VCC 33	GND	VL REF	DN CMD	V PAR	V BE1#	VAD 2
H	AD28	AD26	AD27	PCI RST#	VCC 33	VCC 33	H7	8	9	10	11	12	13	H14	VCC 25	VAD 4	VAD 6	VAD 7	VAD 10	VAD 13
J	AD30	AD31	AD29	REQ 2#	INT B#	VCC	J	GND	GND	GND	GND	GND	GND	J	VCC	VCC VK	V COMP	VAD 14	VCC 25	VCC 25
K	VCC 33	INT D#	GNT 2#	INT C#	GNT 3#	GND	K	GND	GND	GND	GND	GND	GND	K	VCC 25	V CLK	VAD 15	SMI#	SLP#	TPO
L	AC BTCK	AC SDO	SDI3 AGBZ	AC RST#	VCC 33	VCC 33	L	GND	GND	GND	GND	GND	GND	L	GND	PLL VCC	PCI CLK	NMI	IGN NE#	INIT#
M	SDI2 VGT	MS DT	AC SDI0	AC SDI1	AC SYNC	VCC	M	GND	GND	GND	GND	GND	GND	M	VCC	PLL GND	APIC D0	A20 M#	STP CLK#	VCC 33
N	KB CK	KB DT	MS CK	RING#	VSUS 33	GND	N7	8	9	10	11	12	13	N14	VCC 33	APIC CLK	APIC D1	F ERR#	PD CS1#	INTR
P	SUS ST1#	PME#	CPU MISS	GPO 0	VSUS 33	GND	VCC 33	VCC	GND	VCC 33	GND	VCC 33	VCC	GND	GND	VCC 33	PD DRQ	PD A2	PD CS3#	PD A0
R	BAT LOW#	THRM #	SUS CLK	LID#	VSUS 33	VSUS 33	VCC 33	IO RDY	IO R#	SA 19	XD3	VCC 33	SD IOW#	VCC 33	GND	PD DAK#	PD A1	PD D14	PD D0	PD D15
T	EXT SMI#	SUS A#	SMB CK1	SUS C#	PWR GD	GPIO C	IO W#	TEST	OSC	XD1	XD2	SD D11	SD D10	SD DAK#	IRQ 15	PD IOW#	PD IOR#	VCC 33	PD D13	PD D1
U	GPI 1	SMB ALT#	SMB DT1	PWR BTN#	RSM RST#	IO31 VSEL	L REQ#	SA 18	XD5	XD4	SD DRQ	SD D8	SD D9	SD IOR#	SD A1	IRQ 14	PD D10	PD D3	PD D2	PD D12
V	SMB DT2	SMB CK2	PWR OK#	GPIO A	PCK RUN#	PCI STP#	L AD1	MEM W#	SOE#	XD7	XD6	SD D1	SD D4	SD D7	SD D14	SD A2	PD D7	PD RDY	PD D11	PD D5
W	VCC 33	SUS B#	INT RUD#	V BAT	IO30 GHI	L FRM#	L AD2	SER IRQ	SA 16	ROM CS#	XD0	SD D0	SD D3	SD D6	SD D13	SD A0	SD CS3#	PD D6	PD D4	VCC 33
Y	VCC 33	GPI 0	RTC X2	RTC X1	CPU STP#	L AD3	L AD0	SPKR	SA 17	MEM R#	VCC 33	SD RDY	SD D2	SD D5	SD D12	SD D15	SD CS1#	PD D8	PD D9	VCC 33
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20

Note: Some of the pins above have alternate functions and alternate names. The table above contains only one name (usually the most often used function), but the pin lists and pin descriptions contain all names.

Pin Lists

Table 1. VT8233 Pin List (Numerical Order)

Pin		Pin Name	Pin		Pin Name	Pin		Pin Name	Pin		Pin Name	Pin		Pin Name
A01	**P**	**VCC33**	D12	O	MTXD3	H03	IO	AD27	P02	I	PME# / GPI6	U13	IO	SDD09 / SA09
A02	IO	CBE0#	D13	I	MCOL	H04	O	PCIRST#	P03	I	CPUMISS / GPI17	U14	O	SDIOR#
A03	I	SERR#	D14	I	USBOC4#	**H05**	**P**	**VCC33**	P04	OD	GPO0	U15	O	SDA1
A04	IO	TRDY#	D15	I	USBOC0#	**H06**	**P**	**VCC33**	**P05**	**P**	**VSUS33**	U16	I	IRQ14
A05	IO	CBE2#	**D16**	**P**	**VCC33**	**H15**	**P**	**VCC25**	**P06**	**P**	**GND**	U17	IO	PDD10
A06	IO	AD18	D17	IO	USBP1+	H16	IO	VAD04	**P07**	**P**	**VCC33**	U18	IO	PDD03
A07	IO	GPIO8	D18	IO	VAD11	H17	IO	VAD06	**P08**	**P**	**VCC**	U19	IO	PDD02
A08	IO	GPIO14	D19	IO	VAD09	H18	IO	VAD07	**P09**	**P**	**GND**	U20	IO	PDD12
A09	IO	GPIO11	D20	IO	VAD01	H19	IO	VAD10	**P10**	**P**	**VCC33**	V01	IO	SMBDT2 / IO26
A10	**P**	**VCC33**	E01	IO	AD21	H20	IO	VAD13	**P11**	**P**	**GND**	V02	IO	SMBCK2 / IO27
A11	I	MRXD1	E02	IO	AD01	J01	IO	AD30	**P12**	**P**	**VCC33**	V03	O	PWROK#
A12	O	MTXD1	E03	IO	AD03	J02	IO	AD31	**P13**	**P**	**VCC**	V04	IO	GPIOA / GPIO24
A13	O	EECS#	E04	IO	AD11	J03	IO	AD29	**P14**	**P**	**GND**	V05	IO	PCKRUN#
A14	O	EEDO	E05	IO	CBE1#	J04	I	REQ2#	**P15**	**P**	**GND**	V06	O	PCISTP# / GPO6
A15	IO	USBP4+	E06	IO	PAR	J05	I	INTB#	**P16**	**P**	**VCC33**	V07	IO	LAD1
A16	IO	USBP4–	E07	I	REQ4#	**J06**	**P**	**VCC**	P17	I	PDDRQ	V08	IO	MEMW#
A17	IO	USBP2+	E08	O	GNT1#	**J15**	**P**	**VCC**	P18	O	PDA2	V09	O	SOE# / strap
A18	IO	USBP3+	**E09**	**P**	**RAMVCC**	**J16**	**P**	**VCCVK**	P19	O	PDCS3#	V10	IO	XD07
A19	IO	USBP0+	E10	I	MRXD0	J17	I	VCOMP	P20	O	PDA0	V11	IO	XD06
A20	**P**	**VCC25**	E11	I	MRXDV	J18	IO	VAD14	R01	I	BATLOW# / GPI5	V12	IO	SDD01 / SA01
B01	**P**	**VCC33**	E12	I	MTXCLK	**J19**	**P**	**VCC25**	R02	I	THRM#/I18/AOLGPI	V13	IO	SDD04 / SA04
B02	IO	AD08	E13	I	MCRS	**J20**	**P**	**VCC25**	R03	O	SUSCLK / GPO4	V14	IO	SDD07 / SA07
B03	IO	AD09	**E14**	**P**	**USBGND**	**K01**	**P**	**VCC33**	R04	I	LID# / GPI4	V15	IO	SDD14 / SA14
B04	IO	DEVSEL#	**E15**	**P**	**USBGND**	K02	I	INTD#	**R05**	**P**	**VSUS33**	V16	O	SDA2
B05	IO	FRAME#	E16	I	USBCLK	K03	O	GNT2#	**R06**	**P**	**VSUS33**	V17	IO	PDD07
B06	IO	AD17	E17	IO	VAD03	K04	I	INTC#	**R07**	**P**	**VCC33**	V18	I	PDRDY
B07	IO	GPIO10	E18	IO	VAD05	K05	O	GNT3#	R08	I	IORDY / GPI19	V19	IO	PDD11
B08	IO	GPIO15	E19	IO	VBE0#	**K06**	**P**	**GND**	R09	IO	IOR# / GPIO22	V20	IO	PDD05
B09	IO	GPIO13	E20	O	UPCMD	**K15**	**P**	**VCC25**	R10	IO	SA19 / O19 / strap	**W01**	**P**	**VCC33**
B10	I	MRXD3	F01	IO	AD23	K16	I	VCLK	R11	IO	XD03	W02	O	SUSB# / GPO2
B11	I	MRXERR	F02	IO	AD22	K17	IO	VAD15	**R12**	**P**	**VCC33**	W03	I	INTRUD# / GPI16
B12	O	MTXD0	F03	IO	AD20	K18	OD	SMI#	R13	O	SDIOW#	**W04**	**P**	**VBAT**
B13	O	EECK	F04	IO	AD12	K19	OD	SLP# / GPO7	**R14**	**P**	**VCC33**	W05	IO	GPIOD/30/GHI
B14	I	USBOC5#	F05	IO	AD14	K20	I	WSC#/APICRQ#	**R15**	**P**	**GND**	W06	IO	LFRM#
B15	I	USBOC2#	F06	IO	AD15	L01	I	ACBITCLK	R16	O	PDDACK#	W07	IO	LAD2
B16	IO	USBP5–	**F07**	**P**	**VCC33**	L02	O	ACSDOUT	R17	O	PDA1	W08	I	SERIRQ
B17	IO	USBP2–	F08	I	REQ0#	L03	I	ACSDI3/IO21/P1#/ABZ/SB#	R18	IO	PDD14	W09	IO	SA16 / O16 / strap
B18	IO	USBP1–	**F09**	**P**	**RAMGND**	L04	O	ACRST#	R19	IO	PDD00	W10	O	ROMCS# / strap
B19	IO	USBP0–	**F10**	**P**	**MIIVCC**	**L05**	**P**	**VCC33**	R20	IO	PDD15	W11	IO	XD00
B20	**P**	**VCC25**	**F11**	**P**	**MIIVCC**	**L06**	**P**	**VCC33**	T01	IOD	EXTSMI# / GPI2	W12	IO	SDD00 / SA00
C01	IO	AD04	**F12**	**P**	**MIIVCC**	**L15**	**P**	**GND**	T02	O	SUSA# / GPO1	W13	IO	SDD03 / SA03
C02	IO	AD06	**F13**	**P**	**MIIVCC**	**L16**	**P**	**PLLVCC**	T03	IO	SMBCK1	W14	IO	SDD06 / SA06
C03	IO	AD07	**F14**	**P**	**USBVCC**	L17	I	PCICLK	T04	O	SUSC#	W15	IO	SDD13 / SA13
C04	IO	AD10	**F15**	**P**	**USBVCC**	L18	OD	NMI	T05	I	PWRGD	W16	O	SDA0
C05	IO	IRDY#	**F16**	**P**	**GND**	L19	OD	IGNNE#	T06	IO	GPIOC / GPIO25	W17	O	SDCS3#
C06	IO	AD16	F17	O	UPSTB	L20	OD	INIT#	T07	IO	IOW# / GPIO23	W18	IO	PDD06
C07	IO	AD19	F18	O	UPSTB#	M01	I	ACSDI2/IO20/P0#/VGATE	T08	I	TEST	W19	IO	PDD04
C08	IO	GPIO9/VDS	F19	I	DNSTB	M02	IO	MSDT / IRQ12	T09	I	OSC	**W20**	**P**	**VCC33**
C09	IO	GPIO12	F20	I	DNSTB#	M03	I	ACSDIN0	T10	IO	XD01	**Y01**	**P**	**VCC33**
C10	I	MRXD2	G01	IO	AD25	M04	I	ACSDIN1	T11	IO	XD02	Y02	I	GPI0
C11	O	MTXENA	G02	IO	AD24	M05	O	ACSYNC	T12	IO	SDD11 / SA11	Y03	O	RTCX2
C12	O	MTXD2	G03	IO	CBE3#	**M06**	**P**	**VCC**	T13	IO	SDD10 / SA10	Y04	I	RTCX1
C13	I	EEDI	G04	I	REQ3#	**M15**	**P**	**VCC**	T14	O	SDDACK#	Y05	O	CPUSTP# / GPO5
C14	I	USBOC3#	G05	I	INTA#	**M16**	**P**	**PLLGND**	T15	I	IRQ15	Y06	IO	LAD3
C15	I	USBOC1#	**G06**	**P**	**GND**	M17	O	APICD0 / GPIO28	T16	O	PDIOW#	Y07	IO	LAD0
C16	IO	USBP5+	**G07**	**P**	**VCC33**	M18	OD	A20M#	T17	O	PDIOR#	Y08	O	SPKR / strap
C17	IO	USBP3–	**G08**	**P**	**VCC**	M19	OD	STPCLK#	**T18**	**P**	**VCC33**	Y09	IO	SA17 / O17 / strap
C18	IO	VAD08	**G09**	**P**	**GND**	**M20**	**P**	**VCC33**	T19	IO	PDD13	Y10	IO	MEMR#
C19	IO	VAD12	**G10**	**P**	**GND**	N01	IO	KBCK / A20G	T20	IO	PDD01	**Y11**	**P**	**VCC33**
C20	IO	VAD00	**G11**	**P**	**VCC33**	N02	IO	KBDT / KBRC	U01	I	GPI1	Y12	I	SDRDY
D01	IO	AD00	**G12**	**P**	**GND**	N03	IO	MSCK / IRQ1	U02	I	SMBALRT# / I7	Y13	IO	SDD02 / SA02
D02	IO	AD02	**G13**	**P**	**VCC**	N04	I	RING# / GPI3	U03	IO	SMBDT1	Y14	IO	SDD05 / SA05
D03	IO	AD05	**G14**	**P**	**VCC33**	**N05**	**P**	**VSUS33**	U04	I	PWRBTN#	Y15	IO	SDD12 / SA12
D04	IO	AD13	**G15**	**P**	**GND**	**N06**	**P**	**GND**	U05	I	RSMRST#	Y16	IO	SDD15 / SA15
D05	IO	STOP#	**G16**	**P**	**VLREF**	**N15**	**P**	**VCC33**	U06	IO	GPIOE/31/VIDSEL	Y17	O	SDCS1#
D06	O	GNT4#	G17	I	DNCMD	N16	I	APICCLK	U07	IO	LREQ#	Y18	IO	PDD08
D07	O	GNT0#	G18	IO	VPAR	N17	O	APICD1 / GPIO29	U08	IO	SA18 / O18 / strap	Y19	IO	PDD09
D08	I	REQ1#	G19	IO	VBE1#	N18	I	FERR#	U09	IO	XD05	**Y20**	**P**	**VCC33**
D09	IO	MDIO	G20	IO	VAD02	N19	O	PDCS1#	U10	IO	XD04			
D10	O	MDCK	H01	IO	AD28	N20	OD	INTR	U11	I	SDDRQ			
D11	I	MRXCLK	H02	IO	AD26	P01	O	SUSST1# / GPO3	U12	IO	SDD08 / SA08			

Center **GND** pins (24 pins): J8-J13, K8-K13, L8-L13, M8-M13

Table 2. VT8233 Pin List (Alphabetical Order)

Pin		Pin Name	Pin		Pin Name	Pin		Pin Name	Pin		Pin Name	Pin		Pin Name
M18	OD	A20M#	**P06**	**P**	**GND**	C12	O	MTXD2	U12	IO	SDD08 / SA08	H19	IO	VAD10
L01	I	ACBITCLK	**P09**	**P**	**GND**	D12	O	MTXD3	U13	IO	SDD09 / SA09	D18	IO	VAD11
L04	O	ACRST#	**P11**	**P**	**GND**	C11	O	MTXENA	T13	IO	SDD10 / SA10	C19	IO	VAD12
M03	I	ACSDIN0	**P14**	**P**	**GND**	L18	OD	NMI	T12	IO	SDD11 / SA11	H20	IO	VAD13
M04	I	ACSDIN1	**P15**	**P**	**GND**	T09	I	OSC	Y15	IO	SDD12 / SA12	J18	IO	VAD14
M01	I	ACSDI2/IO20/P0#/VGATE	**R15**	**P**	**GND**	E06	IO	PAR	W15	IO	SDD13 / SA13	K17	IO	VAD15
L03	I	ACSDI3/IO21/P1#/ABZ/SB#	D07	O	GNT0#	V05	IO	PCKRUN#	V15	IO	SDD14 / SA14	**W04**	**P**	**VBAT**
L02	O	ACSDOUT	E08	O	GNT1#	L17	I	PCICLK	Y16	IO	SDD15 / SA15	E19	IO	VBE0#
M05	O	ACSYNC	K03	O	GNT2#	H04	O	PCIRST#	T14	O	SDDACK#	G19	IO	VBE1#
D01	IO	AD00	K05	O	GNT3#	V06	O	PCISTP# / GPO6	U11	I	SDDRQ	**G08**	**P**	**VCC**
E02	IO	AD01	D06	O	GNT4#	P20	O	PDA0	U14	O	SDIOR#	**G13**	**P**	**VCC**
D02	IO	AD02	Y02	I	GPI0	R17	O	PDA1	R13	O	SDIOW#	**J06**	**P**	**VCC**
E03	IO	AD03	U01	I	GPI1	P18	O	PDA2	Y12	I	SDRDY	**J15**	**P**	**VCC**
C01	IO	AD04	A07	IO	GPIO8	N19	O	PDCS1#	W08	I	SERIRQ	**M06**	**P**	**VCC**
D03	IO	AD05	C08	IO	GPIO9 / VRDPSLP	P19	O	PDCS3#	A03	I	SERR#	**M15**	**P**	**VCC**
C02	IO	AD06	B07	IO	GPIO10	R19	IO	PDD00	K19	OD	SLP# / GPO7	**P08**	**P**	**VCC**
C03	IO	AD07	A09	IO	GPIO11	T20	IO	PDD01	U02	I	SMBALRT# / I7	**P13**	**P**	**VCC**
B02	IO	AD08	C09	IO	GPIO12	U19	IO	PDD02	T03	IO	SMBCK1	**A20**	**P**	**VCC25**
B03	IO	AD09	B09	IO	GPIO13	U18	IO	PDD03	V02	IO	SMBCK2 / IO27	**B20**	**P**	**VCC25**
C04	IO	AD10	A08	IO	GPIO14	W19	IO	PDD04	U03	IO	SMBDT1	**H15**	**P**	**VCC25**
E04	IO	AD11	B08	IO	GPIO15	V20	IO	PDD05	V01	IO	SMBDT2 / IO26	**J19**	**P**	**VCC25**
F04	IO	AD12	V04	IO	GPIOA / GPIO24	W18	IO	PDD06	K18	OD	SMI#	**J20**	**P**	**VCC25**
D04	IO	AD13	T06	IO	GPIOC / GPIO25	V17	IO	PDD07	V09	O	SOE# / strap	**K15**	**P**	**VCC25**
F05	IO	AD14	W05	IO	GPIOD/30/GHI	Y18	IO	PDD08	Y08	O	SPKR / strap	**A01**	**P**	**VCC33**
F06	IO	AD15	U06	IO	GPIOE/31/VIDSEL	Y19	IO	PDD09	D05	IO	STOP#	**A10**	**P**	**VCC33**
C06	IO	AD16	P04	OD	GPO0	U17	IO	PDD10	M19	OD	STPCLK#	**B01**	**P**	**VCC33**
B06	IO	AD17	L19	OD	IGNNE#	V19	IO	PDD11	T02	O	SUSA# / GPO1	**D16**	**P**	**VCC33**
A06	IO	AD18	L20	OD	INIT#	U20	IO	PDD12	W02	O	SUSB# / GPO2	**F07**	**P**	**VCC33**
C07	IO	AD19	G05	I	INTA#	T19	IO	PDD13	T04	O	SUSC#	**G07**	**P**	**VCC33**
F03	IO	AD20	J05	I	INTB#	R18	IO	PDD14	R03	O	SUSCLK / GPO4	**G11**	**P**	**VCC33**
E01	IO	AD21	K04	I	INTC#	R20	IO	PDD15	P01	O	SUSST1# / GPO3	**G14**	**P**	**VCC33**
F02	IO	AD22	K02	I	INTD#	R16	O	PDDACK#	T08	I	TEST	**H05**	**P**	**VCC33**
F01	IO	AD23	N20	OD	INTR	P17	I	PDDRQ	R02	I	THRM#/I18/AOL	**H06**	**P**	**VCC33**
G02	IO	AD24	W03	I	INTRUD# / GPI16	T17	O	PDIOR#	K20	O	TPO	**K01**	**P**	**VCC33**
G01	IO	AD25	R09	IO	IOR# / GPIO22	T16	O	PDIOW#	A04	IO	TRDY#	**L05**	**P**	**VCC33**
H02	IO	AD26	R08	I	IORDY / GPI19	V18	I	PDRDY	E20	O	UPCMD	**L06**	**P**	**VCC33**
H03	IO	AD27	T07	IO	IOW# / GPIO23	**M16**	**P**	**PLLGND**	F17	O	UPSTB	**M20**	**P**	**VCC33**
H01	IO	AD28	C05	IO	IRDY#	**L16**	**P**	**PLLVCC**	F18	O	UPSTB#	**N15**	**P**	**VCC33**
J03	IO	AD29	U16	I	IRQ14	P02	I	PME# / GPI6	E16	I	USBCLK	**P07**	**P**	**VCC33**
J01	IO	AD30	T15	I	IRQ15	U04	I	PWRBTN#	**E14**	**P**	**USBGND**	**P10**	**P**	**VCC33**
J02	IO	AD31	N01	IO	KBCK / A20G	T05	I	PWRGD	**E15**	**P**	**USBGND**	**P12**	**P**	**VCC33**
N16	I	APICCLK	N02	IO	KBDT / KBRC	V03	O	PWROK#	D15	I	USBOC0#	**P16**	**P**	**VCC33**
M17	O	APICD0 / GPIO28	Y07	IO	LAD0	**F09**	**P**	**RAMGND**	C15	I	USBOC1#	**R07**	**P**	**VCC33**
N17	O	APICD1 / GPIO29	V07	IO	LAD1	**E09**	**P**	**RAMVCC**	B15	I	USBOC2#	**R12**	**P**	**VCC33**
R01	I	BATLOW# / GPI5	W07	IO	LAD2	F08	I	REQ0#	C14	I	USBOC3#	**R14**	**P**	**VCC33**
A02	IO	CBE0#	Y06	IO	LAD3	D08	I	REQ1#	D14	I	USBOC4#	**T18**	**P**	**VCC33**
E05	IO	CBE1#	W06	IO	LFRM#	J04	I	REQ2#	B14	I	USBOC5#	**W01**	**P**	**VCC33**
A05	IO	CBE2#	R04	I	LID# / GPI4	G04	I	REQ3#	B19	IO	USBP0–	**W20**	**P**	**VCC33**
G03	IO	CBE3#	U07	IO	LREQ#	E07	I	REQ4#	A19	IO	USBP0+	**Y01**	**P**	**VCC33**
P03	I	CPUMISS / GPI17	D13	I	MCOL	N04	I	RING# / GPI3	B18	IO	USBP1–	**Y11**	**P**	**VCC33**
Y05	O	CPUSTP# / GPO5	E13	I	MCRS	W10	O	ROMCS# / strap	D17	IO	USBP1+	**Y20**	**P**	**VCC33**
B04	IO	DEVSEL#	D10	O	MDCK	U05	I	RSMRST#	B17	IO	USBP2–	**J16**	**P**	**VCCVK**
G17	I	DNCMD	D09	IO	MDIO	Y04	I	RTCX1	A17	IO	USBP2+	K16	I	VCLK
F19	I	DNSTB	Y10	IO	MEMR#	Y03	O	RTCX2	C17	IO	USBP3–	J17	I	VLCOMP
F20	I	DNSTB#	V08	IO	MEMW#	W09	IO	SA16 / O16 /strap	A18	IO	USBP3+	**G16**	**P**	**VLVREF**
B13	O	EECK	**F10**	**P**	**MIIVCC**	Y09	IO	SA17 / O17 /strap	A16	IO	USBP4–	G18	IO	VPAR
A13	O	EECS#	**F11**	**P**	**MIIVCC**	U08	IO	SA18 / O18 /strap	A15	IO	USBP4+	**N05**	**P**	**VSUS33**
C13	I	EEDI	**F12**	**P**	**MIIVCC**	R10	IO	SA19 / O19 /strap	B16	IO	USBP5–	**P05**	**P**	**VSUS33**
A14	O	EEDO	**F13**	**P**	**MIIVCC**	W16	O	SDA0 / strap	C16	IO	USBP5+	**R05**	**P**	**VSUS33**
T01	IOD	EXTSMI# / GPI2	D11	I	MRXCLK	U15	O	SDA1 / strap	**F14**	**P**	**USBVCC**	**R06**	**P**	**VSUS33**
N18	I	FERR#	E10	I	MRXD0	V16	O	SDA2 / strap	**F15**	**P**	**USBVCC**	W11	IO	XD00
B05	IO	FRAME#	A11	I	MRXD1	Y17	O	SDCS1#	C20	IO	VAD00	T10	IO	XD01
F16	**P**	**GND**	C10	I	MRXD2	W17	O	SDCS3#	D20	IO	VAD01	T11	IO	XD02
G06	**P**	**GND**	B10	I	MRXD3	W12	IO	SDD00 / SA00	G20	IO	VAD02	R11	IO	XD03
G09	**P**	**GND**	E11	I	MRXDV	V12	IO	SDD01 / SA01	E17	IO	VAD03	U10	IO	XD04
G10	**P**	**GND**	B11	I	MRXERR	Y13	IO	SDD02 / SA02	H16	IO	VAD04	U09	IO	XD05
G12	**P**	**GND**	N03	IO	MSCK / IRQ1	W13	IO	SDD03 / SA03	E18	IO	VAD05	V11	IO	XD06
G15	**P**	**GND**	M02	IO	MSDT / IRQ12	V13	IO	SDD04 / SA04	H17	IO	VAD06	V10	IO	XD07
K06	**P**	**GND**	E12	I	MTXCLK	Y14	IO	SDD05 / SA05	H18	IO	VAD07			
L15	**P**	**GND**	B12	O	MTXD0	W14	IO	SDD06 / SA06	C18	IO	VAD08			
N06	**P**	**GND**	A12	O	MTXD1	V14	IO	SDD07 / SA07	D19	IO	VAD09			

Center **GND** pins (24 pins): J8-J13, K8-K13, L8-L13, M8-M13

PIN DESCRIPTIONS

Table 3. Pin Descriptions

V-Link Interface			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
VAD[15:0]	K17, J18, H20, C19, D18, H19, D19, C18, H18, H17, E18, H16, E17, G20, D20, C20	IO	**Address / Data Bus.** Bits 0-7 are implemented and bits 8-15 are reserved for future use. VAD[6:0] are used to send strap information to the chipset north bridge. At power up VAD[6:4] reflect the state of straps on pins SDA[2:0] and VAD[3:0] reflect the state of straps on pins SA[19:16]. The specific interpretation of these straps is north bridge chip design dependent.
VPAR	G18	IO	**Parity.**
VBE[1:0]#	G19, E19	IO	**Byte Enables.** VBE0# is used with VAD[7-0] and VBE1# is used with VAD[15-8] (VBE1# and VAD[15-8] are reserved for future use).
VCLK	K16	I	**V-Link Clock.**
UPCMD	E20	O	**Command from Client-to-Host.**
DNCMD	G17	I	**Command from Host-to-Client.**
UPSTB	F17	O	**Strobe from Client-to-Host.**
UPSTB#	F18	O	**Complement Strobe from Client-to-Host.**
DNSTB	F19	I	**Strobe from Host-to-Client.**
DNSTB#	F20	I	**Complement Strobe from Host-to-Client.**
VLVREF	G16	I	**V-Link Voltage Reference.**
VLCOMP	J17	I	**V-Link Compensation.**
VCCVK	J16	P	**V-Link Compensation Circuit Voltage.**

Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC) Interface			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
APICD1 / GPI29 / GPO29 **APICD0** / GPI28 / GPO28	N17 M17	O O	**Internal APIC Data 1.** Function 0 Rx58[6] = 1 **Internal APIC Data 0.** Function 0 Rx58[6] = 1
APICCLK	N16	I	**APIC Clock.**

Straps			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
Strap / SDA2	V16	I	**Strap.** State reflected on VAD[6] at powerup. No internal function.
Strap / SDA1	U15	I	**Strap.** State reflected on VAD[5] at powerup. No internal function.
Strap / SDA0	W16	I	**Strap.** State reflected on VAD[4] at powerup. No internal function.
Strap / SA19	R10	I	**Strap.** State reflected on VAD[3] at powerup. No internal function.
Strap / SA18	U8	I	**Strap.** State reflected on VAD[2] at powerup. No internal function.
Strap / SA17	Y9	I	**Strap.** State reflected on VAD[1] at powerup. No internal function.
Strap / SA16	W9	I	**Strap.** State reflected on VAD[0] at powerup. No internal function.
Strap / SOE#	V9	I	**Strap.** Strap low to enable (high to disable) auto reboot.
Strap / SPKR	Y8	I	**Strap.** Strap low to enable (high to disable) CPU frequency strapping
Strap / ROMCS# / KBCS#	W10	I	**Strap.** Strap high to enable LPC BIOS ROM

CPU Interface			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
A20M#	M18	OD	**A20 Mask.** Connect to A20 mask input of the CPU to control address bit-20 generation. Logical combination of the A20GATE input (from internal or external keyboard controller) and Port 92 bit-1 (Fast_A20).
FERR#	N18	I	**Numerical Coprocessor Error.** This signal is tied to the coprocessor error signal on the CPU. Internally generates interrupt 13 if active. Output voltage swing is programmable tot 1.5V or 2.5V by Device 17 Function 0 Rx67[2].
IGNNE#	L19	OD	**Ignore Numeric Error.** This pin is connected to the CPU "ignore error" pin.
INIT#	L20	OD	**Initialization.** The VT8233 asserts INIT# if it detects a shut-down special cycle on the PCI bus or if a soft reset is initiated by the register
INTR	N20	OD	**CPU Interrupt.** INTR is driven by the VT8233 to signal the CPU that an interrupt request is pending and needs service.
NMI	L18	OD	**Non-Maskable Interrupt.** NMI is used to force a non-maskable interrupt to the CPU. The VT8233 generates an NMI when PCI bus SERR# is asserted.
SLP# / GPO7	K19	OD	**Sleep.** Used to put the CPU to sleep.
SMI#	K18	OD	**System Management Interrupt.** SMI# is asserted by the VT8233 to the CPU in response to different Power-Management events.
STPCLK#	M19	OD	**Stop Clock.** STPCLK# is asserted by the VT8233 to the CPU to throttle the processor clock.

Note: Connect each of the above signals to 150 Ω pullup resistors to VCC_CMOS (see Design Guide).

PCI Bus Interface

Signal Name	Pin #	I/O	Signal Description
AD[31:0]	(See Pin List)	IO	**Address / Data Bus.** The standard PCI address and data lines. The address is driven with FRAME# assertion and data is driven or received in following cycles.
CBE[3:0]#	G3, A5, E5, A2	IO	**Command / Byte Enable.** The command is driven with FRAME# assertion. Byte enables corresponding to supplied or requested data are driven on following clocks.
DEVSEL#	B4	IO	**Device Select.** The VT8233 asserts this signal to claim PCI transactions through positive or subtractive decoding. As an input, DEVSEL# indicates the response to a VT8233-initiated transaction and is also sampled when decoding whether to subtractively decode the cycle.
FRAME#	B5	IO	**Frame.** Assertion indicates the address phase of a PCI transfer. Negation indicates that one more data transfer is desired by the cycle initiator.
IRDY#	C5	IO	**Initiator Ready.** Asserted when the initiator is ready for data transfer.
TRDY#	A4	IO	**Target Ready.** Asserted when the target is ready for data transfer.
STOP#	D5	IO	**Stop.** Asserted by the target to request the master to stop the current transaction.
SERR#	A3	I	**System Error.** SERR# can be pulsed active by any PCI device that detects a system error condition. Upon sampling SERR# active, the VT8233 can be programmed to generate an NMI to the CPU.
PAR	E6	IO	**Parity.** A single parity bit is provided over AD[31:0] and C/BE[3:0]#.
INTA-D#	G5, J5, K4, K2	I	**PCI Interrupt Request**. These pins are typically connected to the PCI bus INTA#-INTD# pins as follows: INTA# INTB# INTC# INTD# PCI Slot 1 INTA# INTB# INTC# INTD# PCI Slot 2 INTB# INTC# INTD# INTA# PCI Slot 3 INTC# INTD# INTA# INTB# PCI Slot 4 INTD# INTA# INTB# INTC# PCI Slot 5 INTA# INTB# INTC# INTD#
REQ[4:0]#	E7, G4, J4, D8, F8	I	**PCI Request.** This signal goes to the VT8233 to request the PCI bus.
GNT[4:0]#	D6, K5, K3, E8, D7	O	**PCI Grant.** This signal is driven by the VT8233 to grant PCI access.
PCIRST#	H4	O	**PCI Reset.** This signal is used to reset devices attached to the PCI bus.
PCICLK	L17	I	**PCI Clock.** This signal provides timing for all transactions on the PCI Bus.
PCKRUN#	V5	IO	**PCI Bus Clock Run.** This signal indicates whether the PCI clock is or will be stopped (high) or running (low). The VT8233 drives this signal low when the PCI clock is running (default on reset) and releases it when it stops the PCI clock. External devices may assert this signal low to request that the PCI clock be restarted or prevent it from stopping. Connect this pin to ground using a 100 Ω resistor if the function is not used. Refer to the "PCI Mobile Design Guide" and the VIA "VT8633 Apollo Pro266 Design Guide" for more details.

LAN Controller - Media Independent Interface (MII)			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
MCOL	D13	I	**MII Collision Detect.** From the external PHY.
MCRS	E13	I	**MII Carrier Sense.** Asserted by the external PHY when the media is active.
MDCK	D10	O	**MII Management Data Clock.** Sent to the external PHY as a timing reference for MDIO
MDIO	D9	IO	**MII Management Data I/O.** Read from the MDI bit or written to the MDO bit.
MRXCLK	D11	I	**MII Receive Clock.** 2.5 or 25 MHz clock recovered by the PHY.
MRXD[3-0]	B10, C10, A11, E10	I	**MII Receive Data.** Parallel receive data lines driven by the external PHY synchronous with MRXCLK.
MRXDV	E11	I	**MII Receive Data Valid.**
MRXERR	B11	I	**MII Receive Error.** Asserted by the PHY when it detects a data decoding error.
MTXCLK	E12	I	**MII Transmit Clock.** Always active 2.5 or 25 MHz clock supplied by the PHY.
MTXD[3-0]	D12, C12, A12, B12	O	**MII Transmit Data.** Parallel transmit data lines synchronized to MTXCLK.
MTXENA	C11	O	**MII Transmit Enable.** Signals that transmit is active from the MII port to the PHY.
MIIVCC	F10-F13	**Power**	**MII Interface Power.**
RAMVCC	E9	**Power**	**Power For Internal LAN RAM.**
RAMGND	F9	**Power**	**Ground For Internal LAN RAM.**

Serial EEPROM Interface			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
EECS#	A13	O	**Serial EEPROM Chip Select.**
EECK	B13	O	**Serial EEPROM Clock.**
EEDO	A14	O	**Serial EEPROM Data Output.**
EEDI	C13	I	**Serial EEPROM Data Input.**

Low Pin Count (LPC) Interface			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
LFRM#	W6	IO	**LPC Frame.**
LREQ#	U7	IO	**LPC DMA / Bus Master Request.**
LAD[3-0]	Y6, W7, V7, Y7	IO	**LPC Address / Data.**

Note: Connect the LPC interface LPCRST# (LPC Reset) signal to PCIRST#

Universal Serial Bus Interface			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
USBP0+	A19	IO	**USB Port 0 Data +**
USBP0–	B19	IO	**USB Port 0 Data –**
USBP1+	D17	IO	**USB Port 1 Data +**
USBP1–	B18	IO	**USB Port 1 Data –**
USBP2+	A17	IO	**USB Port 2 Data +**
USBP2–	B17	IO	**USB Port 2 Data –**
USBP3+	A18	IO	**USB Port 3 Data +**
USBP3–	C17	IO	**USB Port 3 Data –**
USBP4+	A15	IO	**USB Port 4 Data +**
USBP4–	A16	IO	**USB Port 4 Data –**
USBP5+	C16	IO	**USB Port 5 Data +**
USBP5–	B16	IO	**USB Port 5 Data –**
USBCLK	E16	I	**USB Clock.** 48MHz clock input for the USB interface
USBOC0#	D15	I	**USB Port 0 Over Current Detect.** Port 0 is disabled if low.
USBOC1#	C15	I	**USB Port 1 Over Current Detect.** Port 1 is disabled if low.
USBOC2#	B15	I	**USB Port 2 Over Current Detect.** Port 2 is disabled if low.
USBOC3#	C14	I	**USB Port 3 Over Current Detect.** Port 3 is disabled if low.
USBOC4#	D14	I	**USB Port 4 Over Current Detect.** Port 4 is disabled if low.
USBOC5#	B14	I	**USB Port 5 Over Current Detect.** Port 5 is disabled if low.
USBVCC	F14-F15	**Power**	**Power for USB Port Interface Logic.**
USBGND	E14-E15	**Power**	**Ground for USB Port Interface Logic.**

System Management Bus (SMB) Interface (I^2C Bus)			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
SMBCK1	T3	IO	**SMB / I^2C Channel 1 Clock.**
SMBCK2 / GPI27 / GPO27	V2	IO	**SMB / I^2C Channel 2 Clock.** Rx95[2] = 0
SMBDT1	U3	IO	**SMB / I^2C Channel 1 Data.**
SMBDT2 / GPI26 / GPO26	V1	IO	**SMB / I^2C Channel 2 Data.** Rx95[2] = 0
SMBALRT# / GPI7	U2	I	**SMB Alert.** (System Management Bus I/O space Rx08[3] = 1) When the chip is enabled to allow it, assertion generates an IRQ or SMI interrupt or a power management resume event.

Programmable Chip Selects			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
PCS0# / GPIO20 / ACSDIN2 / VGATE	M1	O	**Programmable Chip Select 0.** RxE4[6]=1, E5[1]=1, and (for CE) E5[4]=0
PCS1# / GPIO21 / ACSDIN3 / AGPBZ# / SLPBTN#	L3	O	**Programmable Chip Select 1.** RxE4[6]=1, E5[2]=1, and (for CE) E5[5]=0

UltraDMA-100 / 66 / 33 Enhanced IDE Interface			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
PDRDY / PDDMARDY / PDSTROBE	V18	I	EIDE Mode: **Primary I/O Channel Ready.** Device ready indicator UltraDMA Mode: **Primary Device DMA Ready**. Output flow control. The device may assert DDMARDY to pause output transfers **Primary Device Strobe**. Input data strobe (both edges). The device may stop DSTROBE to pause input data transfers
SDRDY / SDDMARDY / SDSTROBE	Y12	I	EIDE Mode: **Secondary I/O Channel Ready.** Device ready indicator UltraDMA Mode: **Secondary Device DMA Ready**. Output flow control. The device may assert DDMARDY to pause output transfers **Secondary Device Strobe**. Input data strobe (both edges). The device may stop DSTROBE to pause input data transfers
PDIOR# / PHDMARDY / PHSTROBE	T17	O	EIDE Mode: **Primary Device I/O Read.** Device read strobe UltraDMA Mode: **Primary Host DMA Ready**. Primary channel input flow control**.** The host may assert HDMARDY to pause input transfers **Primary Host Strobe**. Output data strobe (both edges). The host may stop HSTROBE to pause output data transfers
SDIOR# / SHDMARDY / SHSTROBE	U14	O	EIDE Mode: **Secondary Device I/O Read.** Device read strobe UltraDMA Mode: **Secondary Host DMA Ready**. Input flow control. The host may assert HDMARDY to pause input transfers **Host Strobe B**. Output strobe (both edges). The host may stop HSTROBE to pause output data transfers
PDIOW# / PSTOP	T16	O	EIDE Mode: **Primary Device I/O Write.** Device write strobe UltraDMA Mode: **Primary Stop**. Stop transfer: Asserted by the host prior to initiation of an UltraDMA burst; negated by the host before data is transferred in an UltraDMA burst. Assertion of STOP by the host during or after data transfer in UltraDMA mode signals the termination of the burst.
SDIOW# / SSTOP	R13	O	EIDE Mode: **Secondary Device I/O Write.** Device write strobe UltraDMA Mode: **Secondary Stop**. Stop transfer: Asserted by the host prior to initiation of an UltraDMA burst; negated by the host before data is transferred in an UltraDMA burst. Assertion of STOP by the host during or after data transfer in UltraDMA mode signals the termination of the burst.
PDDRQ	P17	I	**Primary Device DMA Request.** Primary channel DMA request
SDDRQ	U11	I	**Secondary Device DMA Request.** Secondary channel DMA request
PDDACK#	R16	O	**Primary Device DMA Acknowledge.** Primary channel DMA acknowledge
SDDACK#	T14	O	**Secondary Device DMA Acknowledge.** Secondary channel DMA acknowledge
IRQ14	U16	I	**Primary Channel Interrupt Request.**
IRQ15	T15	I	**Secondary Channel Interrupt Request.**

UltraDMA-100 / 66 / 33 Enhanced IDE Interface (continued)			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
PDCS1#	N19	O	**Primary Master Chip Select.** This signal corresponds to CS1FX# on the primary IDE connector.
PDCS3#	P19	O	**Primary Slave Chip Select.** This signal corresponds to CS3FX# on the primary IDE connector.
SDCS1# / strap	Y17	O	**Secondary Master Chip Select.** This signal corresponds to CS17X# on the secondary IDE connector. Strap high to enable the on-chip serial EEPROM interface (EEDI, EEDO, EECK, EECS#) for LAN, strap low to disable the EEPROM interface (the LAN EEPROM is assumed to be located on the MII interface). Internal pullup for default to EEPROM interface signals enabled.
SDCS3#	W17	O	**Secondary Slave Chip Select.** This signal corresponds to CS37X# on the secondary IDE connector.
PDA[2-0]	P18, R17, P20	O	**Primary Disk Address.** PDA[2:0] are used to indicate which byte in either the ATA command block or control block is being accessed.
SDA[2-0] / strap	V16, U15, W16	O	**Secondary Disk Address.** SDA[2:0] are used to indicate which byte in either the ATA command block or control block is being accessed. Strap information is communicated to the north bridge via VAD[6:4].
PDD[15-0]	(See Pin List)	IO	**Primary Disk Data**
SDD[15-0] / SA[15-0]	(See Pin List)	IO / IO	**Secondary Disk Data**

Serial IRQ			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
SERIRQ	W8	I	**Serial IRQ**

AC97 Audio / Modem Interface			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
ACRST#	L4	O	**AC97 Reset.**
ACBTCK	L1	I	**AC97 Bit Clock.**
ACSYNC	M5	O	**AC97 Sync.**
ACSDO	L2	O	**AC97 Serial Data Out.**
ACSDIN0	M3	I	**AC97 Serial Data In 0.**
ACSDIN1	M4	I	**AC97 Serial Data In 1.**
ACSDIN2 / GPIO20 / PCS0# / VGATE (CE)	M1	I	**AC97 Serial Data In 2.** RxE4[6] = 0, E5[1] = 0, and (for CE) E5[4] = 0
ACSDIN3 / GPIO21 / PCS1# / SLPBTN# / AGPBZ# (CE)	L3	I	**AC97 Serial Data In 3.** RxE4[6] = 0, E5[2] = 0, and (for CE) E5[5] = 0

Internal Keyboard Controller			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
MSCK / IRQ1	N3	IO / I	**MultiFunction Pin** (Internal mouse controller enabled by Rx51[1]) Rx51[1]=1 **Mouse Clock.** From internal mouse controller. Rx51[1]=0 **Interrupt Request 1**. Interrupt input 1.
MSDT / IRQ12	M2	IO / I	**MultiFunction Pin** (Internal mouse controller enabled by Rx51[1]) Rx51[1]=1 **Mouse Data.** From internal mouse controller. Rx51[1]=0 **Interrupt Request 12**. Interrupt input 12.
KBCK / KA20G	N1	IO / I	**MultiFunction Pin** (Internal keyboard controller enabled by Rx51[0]) Rx51[0]=1 **Keyboard Clock.** From internal keyboard controller Rx51[0]=0 **Gate A20.** Input from external keyboard controller.
KBDT / KBRC	N2	IO / I	**MultiFunction Pin** (Internal keyboard controller enabled by Rx51[0]) Rx51[0]=1 **Keyboard Data.** From internal keyboard controller. Rx51[0]=0 **Keyboard Reset.** From external keyboard controller (KBC) for CPURST# generation
KBCS# / ROMCS# / strap	W10	O / O	**Keyboard Chip Select** (Rx51[0]=0). To external keyboard controller chip. Strap high to enable LPC ROM:

ISA Subset / Parallel BIOS ROM Interface			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
ROMCS# / KBCS# / strap	W10	O	**ROM Chip Select** (Rx51[0]=1). Chip Select to the BIOS ROM. Strap high to enable LPC ROM.
SPKR / strap	Y8	O	**Speaker.** Strap low to enable (high to disable) CPU frequency strapping.
MEMR#	Y10	O	**Memory Read.**
MEMW#	V8	O	**Memory Write.**
IOR# / GPIO22	R9	O	**I/O Read.** RxE4[7] = 1
IOW# / GPIO23	T7	O	**I/O Write.** RxE4[7] = 1
IORDY / GPI19	R8	I	**I/O Ready.** Used to insert wait states in I/O or memory cycles. RxE5[0] = 0
SOE# / strap	V9	O	**XD Bus Tranceiver Output Enable.** Strap low to enable auto reboot.
XD[7-0]	V10, V11, U9. U10, R11, T11, T10, W11	IO	**XD Bus.** For input of BIOS ROM data or data from other on-board I/O or memory devices.
SA[19-16] / GPO[19-16] / straps	R10, U8, Y9, W9	O	**System Address 19-16.** Strap states are passed to North Bridge via VAD[3-0]. Functions as SA[19-16] if RxE4[5] = 0.
SA[15-0] / SDD[15-0]	(See Pin List)	O	**System Address 15-0.**

General Purpose Inputs			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
GPI0 ***(VBAT)***	Y2	I	**General Purpose Input 0.** Status on PMIO Rx20[0]
GPI1 ***(VSUS33)***	U1	I	**General Purpose Input 1.** Status on PMIO Rx20[1]
GPI2 / EXTSMI# ***(VSUS33)***	T1	I	**General Purpose Input 2.** Status on PMIO Rx20[4]
GPI3 / RING# ***(VSUS33)***	N4	I	**General Purpose Input 3.** Status on PMIO Rx20[8]
GPI4 / LID# ***(VSUS33)***	R4	I	**General Purpose Input 4.** Status on PMIO Rx20[11]
GPI5 / BATLOW# ***(VSUS33)***	R1	I	**General Purpose Input 5.** Status on PMIO Rx20[12]
GPI6 / PME# ***(VSUS33)***	P2	I	**General Purpose Input 6.** Status on PMIO Rx20[5]
GPI7 / SMBALRT# ***(VSUS33)***	U2	I	**General Purpose Input 7.**
GPI8 / GPO8	A7	I	**General Purpose Input 8.** RxE4[3] = 0
GPI9 / GPO9 / VRDPSLP (CE)	C8	I	**General Purpose Input 9.** RxE4[3] = 0 and (for CE) E5[3]=1
GPI10 / GPO10	B7	I	**General Purpose Input 10.** RxE4[3] = 0
GPI11 / GPO11	A9	I	**General Purpose Input 11.** RxE4[3] = 0
GPI12 / GPO12	C9	I	**General Purpose Input 12.** RxE4[4] = 0
GPI13 / GPO13	B9	I	**General Purpose Input 13.** RxE4[4] = 0
GPI14 / GPO14	A8	I	**General Purpose Input 14.** RxE4[4] = 0
GPI15 / GPO15	B8	I	**General Purpose Input 15.** RxE4[4] = 0
GPI16 / INTRUDER# ***(VBAT)***	W3	I	**General Purpose Input 16.** Status on PMIO Rx20[6]
GPI17 / CPUMISS (CE)	P3	I	**General Purpose Input 17.** Status on PMIO Rx20[5]
GPI18 / THRM# / AOLGPI (CE)	R2	I	**General Purpose Input 18.** Rx8C[3] = 0
GPI19 / IORDY	R8	I	**General Purpose Input 19.** RxE5[0] = 1
GPI20 / GPO20 / ACSDIN2 / PCS0# / VGATE (CE)	M1	I	**General Purpose Input 20.** RxE4[6]=1, E5[1]=0 and (for CE) E5[4]=0
GPI21 / GPO21 / ACSDIN3 / PCS1# / SLPBTN# / AGPBZ# (CE)	L3	I	**General Purpose Input 21.** RxE4[6]=1, E5[2]=0 and (for CE) E5[5]=0
GPI22 / GPO22 / IOR#	R9	I	**General Purpose Input 22.** RxE4[7] = 0
GPI23 / GPO23 / IOW#	T7	I	**General Purpose Input 23.** RxE4[7] = 0
GPI24 / GPO24 / GPIOA	V4	I	**General Purpose Input 24.** RxE6[0] = 0
GPI25 / GPO25 / GPIOC	T6	I	**General Purpose Input 25.** RxE6[1] = 0
GPI26 / GPO26 / SMBDT2 ***(VSUS33)***	Y2	I	**General Purpose Input 26.** Rx95[2] = 1 & Rx95[3] = 0
GPI27 / GPO27 / SMBCK2 ***(VSUS33)***	T5	I	**General Purpose Input 27.** Rx95[2] = 1 & Rx95[3] = 0
GPI28 / GPO28 / APICD0	M17	I	**General Purpose Input 28.** Rx58[6] = 0 & ACPI 4C[28] = 1
GPI29 / GPO29 / APICD1	N17	I	**General Purpose Input 29.** Rx58[6] = 0 & ACPI 4C[29] = 1
GPI30 / GPO30 / GPIOD / GHI# (CE)	W5	I	**General Purpose Input 30.** RxE6[6] = 0 & (for CE) E5[3]=1
GPI31 / GPO31 / GPIOE / VIDSEL (CE)	U6	I	**General Purpose Input 31.** RxE6[7] = 0 & (for CE) E5[3]=1

Note: Default pin function is underlined in the signal name column above.
Note: Input pin status for the above GPI pins 31-0 is also available on PMIO Rx4B-48[31-0]
Note: See also Power Management I/O register Rx50 for input pin change status for GPI16-19 and 24-27
Note: See also Power Management I/O register Rx52 for SCI/SMI select for GPI16-19 and 24-27
Note: See also Power Management I/O register Rx4C. General purpose input pins 20-31 are shared with OD (open drain) general purpose output functions, so to use one of these pins as an input pin, a one must be written to the corresponding bit of PMIO Rx4C.

General Purpose I/O			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
GPIOA / GPI24 / GPO24	V4	IO	**General Purpose I/O A / 24.** RxE6[0] = 1
GPIOC / GPI25 / GPO25	T6	IO	**General Purpose I/O C / 25.**
GPIOD / GPI30 / GPO30 / GHI# (CE)	W5	IO	**General Purpose I/O D / 30.**
GPIOE / GPI31 / GPO31 / VIDSEL (CE)	U6	IO	**General Purpose I/O E / 31.**

The output type of the above pins may be selected as either OD or TTL (see Device 17 Function 0 RxE7)

General Purpose Outputs			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
GPO0 ***(VSUS33)***	P4	OD	**General Purpose Output 0.**
GPO1 / SUSA# ***(VSUS33)***	T2	O	**General Purpose Output 1.** Rx94[2] = 1
GPO2 / SUSB# ***(VSUS33)***	W2	O	**General Purpose Output 2.** Rx94[3] = 1
GPO3 / SUSST1# ***(VSUS33)***	P1	O	**General Purpose Output 3.** Rx94[4] = 1
GPO4 / SUSCLK ***(VSUS33)***	R3	O	**General Purpose Output 4.** Rx95[1] = 1
GPO5 / CPUSTP#	Y5	O	**General Purpose Output 5.** RxE4[0] = 1
GPO6 / PCISTP#	V6	O	**General Purpose Output 6.** RxE4[1] = 1
GPO7 / SLP#	K19	O	**General Purpose Output 7.** RxE4[2] = 1
GPO8 / GPI8	A7	O	**General Purpose Output 8.** RxE4[3]=1
GPO9 / GPI9 / VRDPSLP (CE)	C8	O	**General Purpose Output 9.** RxE4[3]=1 and RxE5[3] = 1
GPO10 / GPI10	B7	O	**General Purpose Output 10.** RxE4[3]=1
GPO11 / GPI11	A9	O	**General Purpose Output 11.** RxE4[3]=1
GPO12 / GPI12	C9	O	**General Purpose Output 12.** RxE4[4]=1
GPO13 / GPI13	B9	O	**General Purpose Output 13.** RxE4[4]=1
GPO14 / GPI14	A8	O	**General Purpose Output 14.** RxE4[4]=1
GPO15 / GPI15	B8	O	**General Purpose Output 15.** RxE4[4]=1
GPO16 / SA16 / strap	W9	O	**General Purpose Output 16.** RxE4[5] = 1
GPO17 / SA17 / strap	Y9	O	**General Purpose Output 17.** RxE4[5] = 1
GPO18 / SA18 / strap	U8	O	**General Purpose Output 18.** RxE4[5] = 1
GPO19 / SA19 / strap	R10	O	**General Purpose Output 19.** RxE4[5] = 1
GPO20 / GPI20 / ACSDIN2 / PCS0# / VGATE (CE)	M1	OD	**GP Output 20.** RxE4[6]=1, E5[1]=0 & (for CE) E5[4]=0
GPO21 / GPI21 / ACSDIN3 / PCS1# /SLPBTN# / AGPBZ# (CE)	L3	OD	**GP Output 21.** RxE4[6]=1, E5[2]=0 & (for CE) E5[5]=0
GPO22 / GPI22 / IOR#	R9	OD	**General Purpose Output 22.** RxE4[7] = 0
GPO23 / GPI23 / IOW#	T7	OD	**General Purpose Output 23.** RxE4[7] = 0
GPO24 / GPI24 / GPIOA	V4	O/OD	**General Purpose Output 24.** RxE6[0] = 1
GPO25 / GPI25 / GPIOC	T6	O/OD	**General Purpose Output 25.** RxE6[1] = 1
GPO26 / GPI26 / SMBDT2 ***(VSUS33†)***	Y2	OD	**General Purpose Output 26.** Rx95[2] = 1 & Rx95[3] = 1
GPO27 / GPI27 / SMBCK2 ***(VSUS33†)***	T5	OD	**General Purpose Output 27.** Rx95[2] = 1 & Rx95[3] = 1
GPO28 / GPI28 / APICD0	M17	OD	**General Purpose Output 28.** Rx58[6] = 0
GPO29 / GPI29 / APICD1	N17	OD	**General Purpose Output 29.** Rx58[6] = 0
GPO30 / GPI30 / GPIOD / GHI# (CE)	W5	O/OD	**General Purpose Out 30.** RxE6[6] = 1 & (for CE) E5[3]=1
GPO31 / GPI31 / GPIOE / VIDSEL (CE)	U6	O/OD	**General Purpose Out 31.** RxE6[7] = 1 & (for CE) E5[3]=1

Note: The output state for each of the above general purpose outputs is selectable via Power Management I/O registers Rx4C-48

Note: The output types of GPO24-25 and 30-31 are selectable OD vs TTL (see Function 0 RxE7)

Note: Default pin functions are underlined in the table above.

† The suspend voltage is only used for maintaining the operation of the SMB function on thses pins (Device 17 Function 0 Rx95[3] = 0). If VCC power is lost, the GPIO function of these pins and the state of PMIO Rx4C[27:26} (which determines the GPO output level) will be lost also.

Power Management and Event Detection			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
PWRBTN#	U4	I	**Power Button.** Used by the Power Management subsystem to monitor an external system on/off button or switch.
SLPBTN# / GPIO21 / ACSDIN3 / PCS1# / AGPBZ#	L3	I	**Sleep Button.** Used by the Power Management subsystem to monitor an external sleep button or switch. RxE4[6] = 1, 80[6] = 1, E5[2] = 0 and ACPI Rx4C[21] = 1
RSMRST#	U5	I	**Resume Reset.** Resets the internal logic connected to the VSUS33 power plane and also resets portions of the internal RTC logic.
EXTSMI# / GPI2	T1	IOD	**External System Management Interrupt.** When enabled to allow it, a falling edge on this input causes an SMI# to be generated to the CPU to enter SMI mode. (10K PU to VCCS if not used) (3.3V only)
PME# / GPI6	P2	I	**Power Management Event.** (10K PU to VCCS if not used)
SMBALRT# / GPI7	U2	I	**SMB Alert**. When the chip is enabled to allow it, assertion generates an IRQ or SMI or power management event. (10K PU to VCCS if not used)
LID# / GPI4	R4	I	**Notebook Computer Display Lid Open / Closed Monitor.** Used by the Power Management subsystem to monitor the opening and closing of the display lid of notebook computers. Can be used to detect either low-to-high or high-to-low transitions to generate an SMI#. (10K PU to VCCS if not used)
INTRUDER# / GPI16	W3	I	**Intrusion Indicator.** The value of this bit may be read at PMIO Rx20[6]
THRM# / GPI18 / AOLGPI (CE)	R2	I	**Thermal Alarm Monitor.** Rx8C[3] = 1. Rising or falling edges (selectable by PMIO Rx2C[6]) may be detected to set status at PMIO Rx20[10]. Setting of this status bit may then be used to generate an SCI or SMI. THRM# may also be used to enable duty cycle control of stop-clock (STPCLK#) to automatically limit maximum temperature (see Device 17 Function 0 Rx8C[7-3]).
RING# / GPI3	N4	I	**Ring Indicator.** May be connected to external modem circuitry to allow the system to be re-activated by a received phone call. (10K PU to VCCS if not used)
BATLOW# / GPI5	R1	I	**Battery Low Indicator.** (10K PU to VCCS if not used) (3.3V only)
CPUSTP# / GPO5	Y5	O	**CPU Clock Stop** (RxE4[0] = 0). Signals the system clock generator to disable the CPU clock outputs. Not connected if not used.
PCISTP# / GPO6	V6	O	**PCI Clock Stop** (RxE4[1] = 0). Signals the system clock generator to disable the PCI clock outputs. Not connected if not used.
SUSA# / GPO1	T2	O	**Suspend Plane A Control** (Rx94[2]=0). Asserted during power management POS, STR, and STD suspend states. Used to control the primary power plane. (10K PU to VCCS if not used)
SUSB# / GPO2	W2	O	**Suspend Plane B Control** (Rx94[3]=0). Asserted during power management STR and STD suspend states. Used to control the secondary power plane. (10K PU to VCCS if not used)
SUSC#	T4	O	**Suspend Plane C Control.** Asserted during power management STD suspend state. Used to control the tertiary power plane. Also connected to ATX power-on circuitry.
SUSST1# / GPO3	P1	O	**Suspend Status 1** (Rx94[4] = 0). Typically connected to the North Bridge to provide information on host clock status. Asserted when the system may stop the host clock, such as Stop Clock or during POS, STR, or STD suspend states. Connect 10K PU to VCCS.
SUSCLK	R3	O	**Suspend Clock.** 32.768 KHz output clock for use by the North Bridge (e.g., VT8633 or VT8366) for DRAM refresh purposes. Stopped during Suspend-to-Disk and Soft-Off modes. Connect 10K PU to VCCS.
CPUMISS (CE) / GPI17	P3	I	**CPU Missing.** Used to detect the physical presence of the CPU chip in its socket. High indicates no CPU present. Connect to the CPUMISS pin of the CPU socket. The state of this pin may be read in the SMBus 2 registers. This pin may be used as CPUMISS and GPI17 at the same time.
AOLGPI (CE) / GPI18 / THRM#	R2	I	**Alert On LAN.** The state of this pin may be read in the SMBus 2 registers. This pin may be used as AOLGPI, GPI18 and THRM# all at the same time.

Resets, Clocks, and Power Status			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
PWRGD	T5	I	**Power Good.** Connected to the PWRGOOD signal on the Power Supply.
PWROK#	V3	O	**Power OK.**
PCIRST#	H4	O	**PCI Reset.** Active low reset signal for the PCI bus. The VT8233 will assert this pin during power-up or from the control register.
OSC	T9	I	**Oscillator.** 14.31818 MHz clock signal used by the internal Timer.
RTCX1	Y4	I	**RTC Crystal Input**: 32.768 KHz crystal or oscillator input. This input is used for the internal RTC and for power-well power management logic.
RTCX2	Y3	O	**RTC Crystal Output**: 32.768 KHz crystal output
TEST	T8	I	**Test.**
TPO	K20	O	**Test Pin Output.** Output pin for test mode.

Power and Ground			
Signal Name	**Pin #**	**I/O**	**Signal Description**
VCC33	A1, 10, B1, D16, F7, G7, 11, 14, H5-6, K1, L5-6, M20, N15, P7, 10, 12, 16, R7, 12, 14, T18, W1, 20, Y1, 11, 20	P	**I/O Power** (3.3V ±5%).
VCC25	A20, B20, H15, J19, J20, K15	P	**I/O Power** (2.5V ±5%).
VCC	G8, G13, J6, J15, M6, M15, P8, P13	P	**Core Power.** 2.5V nominal ±5% (2.375V to 2.625V). This supply is turned on only when the mechanical switch on the power supply is turned on and the PWRON signal is conditioned high.
GND	(See Pin List)	P	**Ground.** Connect to primary motherboard ground plane.
VSUS33	N5, P5, R5, R6	P	**Suspend Power.** Always available unless the mechanical switch of the power supply is turned off. If the "soft-off" state is not implemented, then this pin can be connected to VCC33. Signals powered by or referenced to this plane are: PWRGD, RSMRST#, PWRBTN#, SMBCK1/2, SMBDT1/2, GPO0, SUSA# / GPO1, SUSB# / GPO2, SUSC#, SUSST1# / GPO3, SUSCLK / GPO4, GPI1, GPI2 / EXTSMI#, GPI3 / RING#, GPI4 / LID, GPI5 / BATLOW#, GPI6 / PME#, GPI7 / SMBALRT#
VBAT	W4	P	**RTC Battery.** Battery input for internal RTC (RTCX1, RTCX2)
VLVREF	G16	P	**V-Link Voltage Reference** (0.9V). 0.34 x VCC25 to 0.38 x VCC25.
VCCVK	J16	P	**V-Link Compensation Circuit Voltage** (2.5V ±5%).
MIIVCC	F10-F13	P	**LAN MII Power.** Power for LAN Media Independent Interface (interface to external PHY). Connect to VCC33 through a ferrite bead.
RAMVCC	E9	P	**LAN RAM Power.** Power for LAN internal RAM. Connect to VCC through a ferrite bead.
RAMGND	F9	P	**LAN RAM Ground.** Connect to GND through a ferrite bead.
USBVCC	F14-F15	P	**USB Differential Output Power.** Power for USB differential outputs (USBP0+, P0–, P1+, P1–, P2+, P2–, P3+, P3–, P4+, P4–, P5+, P5–). Connect to VSUS33 through a ferrite bead.
USBGND	E14-E15	P	**USB Differential Output Ground.** Connect to GND through a ferrite bead.
PLLVCC	L16	P	**PLL Power.** Connect to VCC through a ferrite bead.
PLLGND	M16	P	**PLL Ground.** Connect to GND through a ferrite bead.

REGISTERS

Register Overview

The following tables summarize the configuration and I/O registers of the VT8233. These tables also document the power-on default value ("Default") and access type ("Acc") for each register. Access type definitions used are RW (Read/Write), RO (Read/Only), "—" for reserved / used (essentially the same as RO), and RWC (or just WC) (Read / Write 1's to Clear individual bits). Registers indicated as RW may have some read/only bits that always read back a fixed value (usually 0 if unused); registers designated as RWC or WC may have some read-only or read write bits (see individual register descriptions for details).

Detailed register descriptions are provided in the following section of this document. All offset and default values are shown in hexadecimal unless otherwise indicated

Table 4. Memory Mapped Registers

FEC00000	APIC Index	(8-bit)
FEC00010	APIC Data	(32-bit)
FEC00020	APIC IRQ Pin Assertion	(8-bit)
FEC00040	APIC EOI	(8-bit)

"APIC" = "Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller"

Table 5. Function Summary

Bus	Device	Func	Device ID	Function
0	17 (11h)	0	3074h	Bus Control & Power Mgmt
0	17 (11h)	1	0571h	IDE Controller
0	17 (11h)	2	3038h	USB Controller Ports 0-1
0	17 (11h)	3	3038h	USB Controller Ports 2-3
0	17 (11h)	4	3038h	USB Controller Ports 4-5
0	17 (11h)	5	3059h	AC97 Audio Codec Controller
0	17 (11h)	6	3068h	MC97 Modem Codec Ctrlr
0	18 (12h)	0	3043h	VIA LAN Controller

Table 6. System I/O Map

Port	Function	Actual Port Decoding
00-1F	Master DMA Controller	0000 0000 000x nnnn
20-3F	Master Interrupt Controller	0000 0000 001x xxxn
40-5F	Timer / Counter	0000 0000 010x xxnn
60-6F	Keyboard Controller	0000 0000 0110 xnxn
(60h)	KBC Data	0000 0000 0110 x0x0
(61h)	Misc Functions & Spkr Ctrl	0000 0000 0110 xxx1
(64h)	KBC Command / Status	0000 0000 0110 x1x0
70-77	RTC/CMOS/NMI-Disable	0000 0000 0111 0nnn
78-7F	-available for system use-	0000 0000 0111 1xxx
80	-reserved- (debug port)	0000 0000 1000 0000
81-8F	DMA Page Registers	0000 0000 1000 nnnn
90-91	-available for system use-	0000 0000 1001 000x
92	System Control	0000 0000 1001 0010
93-9F	-available for system use-	0000 0000 1001 nnnn
A0-BF	Slave Interrupt Controller	0000 0000 101x xxxn
C0-DF	Slave DMA Controller	0000 0000 110n nnnx
E0-FF	-available for system use-	0000 0000 111x xxxx
100-CF7	-available for system use*	
CF8-CFB	PCI Configuration Address	0000 1100 1111 10xx
CFC-CFF	PCI Configuration Data	0000 1100 1111 11xx
D00-FFFF	-available for system use-	

Table 7. Registers

Legacy I/O Registers

Port	Master DMA Controller Registers	Default	Acc
00	Channel 0 Base & Current Address		RW
01	Channel 0 Base & Current Count		RW
02	Channel 1 Base & Current Address		RW
03	Channel 1 Base & Current Count		RW
04	Channel 2 Base & Current Address		RW
05	Channel 2 Base & Current Count		RW
06	Channel 3 Base & Current Address		RW
07	Channel 3 Base & Current Count		RW
08	Status / Command		RW
09	Write Request		**WO**
0A	Write Single Mask		**WO**
0B	Write Mode		**WO**
0C	Clear Byte Pointer FF		**WO**
0D	Master Clear		**WO**
0E	Clear Mask		**WO**
0F	Read / Write Mask		RW

Port	Master Interrupt Controller Regs	Default	Acc
20	Master Interrupt Control	—	*
21	Master Interrupt Mask	—	*
20	Master Interrupt Control Shadow	—	**RW**
21	Master Interrupt Mask Shadow	—	**RW**

* RW if shadow registers are disabled

Port	Timer/Counter Registers	Default	Acc
40	Timer / Counter 0 Count		RW
41	Timer / Counter 1 Count		RW
42	Timer / Counter 2 Count		RW
43	Timer / Counter Control		**WO**

Port	Keyboard Controller Registers	Default	Acc
60	Keyboard Controller Data		RW
61	Misc Functions & Speaker Control		RW
64	Keyboard Ctrlr Command / Status		RW

Port	CMOS / RTC / NMI Registers	Default	Acc
70	CMOS Memory Address & NMI Disa		**WO**
71	CMOS Memory Data (128 bytes)		RW
74	CMOS Memory Address		RW
75	CMOS Memory Data (256 bytes)		RW

NMI Disable is port 70h (CMOS Memory Address) bit-7.
RTC control occurs via specific CMOS data locations (0-Dh).
Ports 72-73 may be used to access all 256 locations of CMOS.
Ports 74-75 may be used to access CMOS if the internal RTC is disabled.

Legacy I/O Registers (continued)

Port	DMA Page Registers	Default	Acc
87	DMA Page – DMA Channel 0		RW
83	DMA Page – DMA Channel 1		RW
81	DMA Page – DMA Channel 2		RW
82	DMA Page – DMA Channel 3		RW
8F	DMA Page – DMA Channel 4		RW
8B	DMA Page – DMA Channel 5		RW
89	DMA Page – DMA Channel 6		RW
8A	DMA Page – DMA Channel 7		RW

Port	System Control Registers	Default	Acc
92	System Control		RW

Port	Slave Interrupt Controller Regs	Default	Acc
A0	Slave Interrupt Control	—	*
A1	Slave Interrupt Mask	—	*
A0	Slave Interrupt Control Shadow	—	**RW**
A1	Slave Interrupt Mask Shadow	—	**RW**

* RW accessible if shadow registers are disabled

Port	Slave DMA Controller Registers	Default	Acc
C0	Channel 0 Base & Current Address		RW
C2	Channel 0 Base & Current Count		RW
C4	Channel 1 Base & Current Address		RW
C6	Channel 1 Base & Current Count		RW
C8	Channel 2 Base & Current Address		RW
CA	Channel 2 Base & Current Count		RW
CC	Channel 3 Base & Current Address		RW
CE	Channel 3 Base & Current Count		RW
D0	Status / Command		RW
D2	Write Request		**WO**
D4	Write Single Mask		**WO**
D6	Write Mode		**WO**
D8	Clear Byte Pointer FF		**WO**
DA	Master Clear		**WO**
DC	Clear Mask		**WO**
DE	Read / Write Mask		RW

Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup Registers (I/O Space)

Port	Wakeup Index Registers	Default	Acc
002E	Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup Index †	00	RW
002F	Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup Data †	00	RW

† Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup registers (index values E0-EF defined below) are accessible if Function 0 PCI Configuration register Rx51[1] = 1.

KB / Mouse Wakeup Registers (Indexed via Port 2E/2F)

Offset	Reserved	Default	Acc
00-DF	-reserved-	—	RO

Chip Version CD:

Offset	KB / MS Wakeup (Rx51[1]=1)	Default	Acc
E0	Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup Enable	**80**	**RW**
E1	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 0	**F0**	**RW**
E2	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 1	00	**RW**
E3	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 2	00	**RW**
E4	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 3	00	**RW**
E5	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 4	00	**RW**
E6	Mouse Wakeup Button Status Code	**09**	**RW**
E7-EF	-reserved-	—	RO

Chip Version CE:

Offset	KB / MS Wakeup (Rx51[1]=1)	Default	Acc
E0	Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup Enable	**08**	**RW**
E1	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 0	**F0**	**RW**
E2	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 1	00	**RW**
E3	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 2	00	**RW**
E4	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 3	00	**RW**
E5	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 4	00	**RW**
E6	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 5	00	**RW**
E7	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 6	00	**RW**
E8	Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 7	00	**RW**
E9	Mouse Wakeup Scan Code Set 1	**09**	**RW**
EA	Mouse Wakeup Scan Code Set 2	00	**RW**
EB	Mouse Wakeup Scan Code Mask	00	**RW**
EC-EF	-reserved-	—	RO

Game Port Registers (I/O Space)

Offset	Game Port (200-20F typical)	Default	Acc
0	-reserved-	00	—
1	Game Port Status		**RO**
1	Start One-Shot		**WO**
2-F	-reserved-	00	—

Memory Mapped Registers – IOAPIC

Address	APIC Index / Data	Default	Acc
FEC00000	APIC Register Index	00	RW
FEC00001-0F	-reserved-	00	—
FEC00010-13	APIC Register Data	0000 0000	RW
FEC00014-1F	-reserved-	00	—
FEC00020	APIC IRQ Pin Assertion	xx	**WO**
FEC00021-3F	-reserved-	00	—
FEC00040	APIC EOI	xx	**WO**
FEC00041-FF	-reserved-	00	—

Offset	APIC Registers	Default	Acc
0	APIC ID	0000 0000	RW
1	APIC Version	**CD: 0017 0011**	**RO**
		CE: 0017 8002	
2	APIC Arbitration	0000 0000	**RO**
3	CE: Boot Configuration	0000 0000	RW
3	CD: -reserved-	0000 0000	—
4-F	-reserved-	0000 0000	—
11-10	I/O Redirection– AIRQ0	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
13-12	I/O Redirection– AIRQ1	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
15-14	I/O Redirection– AIRQ2	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
17-16	I/O Redirection– AIRQ3	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
19-18	I/O Redirection– AIRQ4	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
1B-1A	I/O Redirection– AIRQ5	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
1D-1C	I/O Redirection– AIRQ6	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
1F-1E	I/O Redirection– AIRQ7	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
21-20	I/O Redirection– AIRQ8	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
23-20	I/O Redirection– AIRQ9	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
25-24	I/O Redirection– AIRQ10	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
27-26	I/O Redirection– AIRQ11	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
29-28	I/O Redirection– AIRQ12	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
2B-2A	I/O Redirection– AIRQ13	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
2D-2C	I/O Redirection– AIRQ14	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
2F-2E	I/O Redirection– AIRQ15	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
31-30	I/O Redirection– AIRQ16	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
33-32	I/O Redirection– AIRQ17	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
35-34	I/O Redirection– AIRQ18	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
37-36	I/O Redirection– AIRQ19	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
39-38	I/O Redirection– AIRQ20	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
3B-3A	I/O Redirection– AIRQ21	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
3D-3C	I/O Redirection– AIRQ22	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
3F-3E	I/O Redirection– AIRQ23	xxx1xxxx xxxxxxxx	RW
40-4F	-reserved-	0000 0000	—

Note: The "I/O Redirection" registers are 64-bit registers, so each uses two consecutive index locations, with the lower 32 bits at the even index and the upper 32 bits at the odd index.

Device 17 Function 0 Registers – Bus Control & Power Management

Configuration Space Bus Control & PM Header Registers

Offset	Configuration Space Header	Default	Acc
1-0	Vendor ID	**1106**	RO
3-2	Device ID	**3074**	RO
5-4	Command	**0087**	**RW**
7-6	Status	**0200**	**WC**
8	Revision ID	**nn**	RO
9	Programming Interface	00	RO
A	Sub Class Code	**01**	RO
B	Base Class Code	**06**	RO
C	-reserved- (cache line size)	00	—
D	-reserved- (latency timer)	00	—
E	Header Type	**80**	RO
F	Built In Self Test (BIST)	00	RO
10-27	-reserved- (base address registers)	00	—
28-2B	-reserved- (unassigned)	00	—
2D-2C	Sub Vendor ID	0000	RO
2F-2E	Sub Device ID	0000	RO
30-33	-reserved- (expan. ROM base addr)	00	—
34-3B	-reserved- (unassigned)	00	—
3C	-reserved- (interrupt line)	00	—
3D	-reserved- (interrupt pin)	00	—
3E	-reserved- (min gnt)	00	—
3F	-reserved- (max lat)	00	—

Configuration Space PCI-to-ISA Bridge-Specific Registers

Offset	ISA Bus Control	Default	Acc
40	ISA Bus Control	00	RW
41	BIOS ROM Decode Control	00	RW
42	Line Buffer Control	00	RW
43	Delay Transaction Control	00	RW
44-47	-reserved-	00	—
48	Read Pass Write Control	00	RW
49	CCA Control	00	RW
4A-4B	-reserved-	00	—

Offset	Miscellaneous Control	Default	Acc
4C	IDE Interrupt Routing	00	RW
4D	External APIC IRQ Output Control	00	RW
4E	Internal RTC Test Mode	00	RW
4F	PCI Bus & CPU Interface Control	00	RW

Offset	Function Control	Default	Acc
50	Function Control 1	**09**	RW
51	Function Control 2	**0D**	RW

Offset	Serial IRQ, LPC & PC/PCI Control	Default	Acc
52	Serial IRQ & LPC Control	00	RW
53	CD: PC/PCI DMA Control	00	RW
53	CE: -reserved-	00	RW

Offset	Plug and Play Control	Default	Acc
54	PCI Interrupt Polarity	00	RW
55	PnP Routing for PCI INTA	00	RW
56	PnP Routing for PCI INTB-C	00	RW
57	PnP Routing for PCI INTD	00	RW

Offset	GPIO and Miscellaneous Control	Default	Acc
58	Miscellaneous Control 0	**40**	RW
59	Miscellaneous Control 1	00	RW
5A	CE: DMA Bandwidth Control	00	RW
5A	CD: -reserved-	00	—
5B	-reserved-	00	—

Offset	Programmable Chip Select Control	Default	Acc
5D-5C	PCS0# I/O Port Address	0000	RW
5F-5E	PCS1# I/O Port Address	0000	RW
61-60	PCS2# I/O Port Address	0000	RW
63-62	PCS3# I/O Port Address	0000	RW
64	PCS[1-0]# I/O Port Address Mask	00	RW
65	PCS[3-2]# I/O Port Address Mask	00	RW
66	Programmable Chip Select Control	00	RW
67	Output Control	**04**	RW
68-6B	-reserved-	00	—

Offset	Miscellaneous	Default	Acc
6C	ISA Positive Decoding Control 1	00	RW
6D	ISA Positive Decoding Control 2	00	RW
6E	ISA Positive Decoding Control 3	00	RW
6F	ISA Positive Decoding Control 4	00	RW
71-70	Sub Vendor ID	0000	RW
73-72	Sub Device ID	0000	RW
74-77	-reserved-	00	—
78	CE: -reserved-	00	—
79	CE: PnP IRQ/DRQ Test (do not prog)	00	RW
79-78	CD: PnP IRQ/DRQ Test (do not prog)	00	RW
7A	IDE / USB Test (do not program)	00	RW
7B	PLL Test (do not program)	00	RW
7C	I/O Pad Control	00	RW
7D-7F	-reserved-	00	—

Configuration Space Power Management Registers

Offset	Power Management	Default	Acc
80	General Configuration 0	00	RW
81	General Configuration 1	00	RW
82	ACPI Interrupt Select	00	RW
83	Reserved (Do Not Program)	00	—
85-84	Primary Interrupt Channel	0000	RW
87-86	Secondary Interrupt Channel	0000	RW
8B-88	Power Mgmt I/O Base (256 Bytes)	**0000 0001**	RW
8C	Host Bus Power Mgmt Control	00	RW
8D	Throttle / Clock Stop Control	00	RW
8E-8F	-reserved-	00	—
93-90	GP Timer Control	0000 0000	RW
94	Power Well Control	00	RW
95	Miscellaneous Control	00	RW
96	Power On / Reset Control	00	RW
97	-reserved-	00	—
98	GP2 / GP3 Timer Control	00	RW
99	GP2 Timer	00	RW
9A	GP3 Timer	00	RW
9B-A0	-reserved-	00	—
A1	Write value for Offset 9 (Prog Intfc)	00	**WO**
A2	Write value for Offset A (Sub Class)	00	**WO**
A3	Write value for Offset B (Base Class)	00	**WO**
A4-BF	-reserved-	00	—
C3-C0	Power Manamgement Capability	**0002 0001**	**RO**
C7-C4	Power Mgmt Capability CSR	**0000 0000**	RW
C8-CF	-reserved-	00	—

Configuration Space SMBus Registers

Offset	System Management Bus	Default	Acc
D1-D0	SMBus I/O Base (16 Bytes)	**0001**	RW
D2	SMBus Host Configuration	00	RW
D3	SMBus Host Slave Command	00	RW
D4	SMBus Slave Address Shadow Port 1	00	RW
D5	SMBus Slave Address Shadow Port 2	00	RW
D6	SMBus Revision ID	**nn**	**RO**
D7-DF	-reserved-	00	—

Configuration Space General Purpose I/O Registers

Offset	General Purpose I/O	Default	Acc
E0	GPI Inversion Control	00	RW
E1	GPI SCI / SMI Select	00	RW
E2-E3	-reserved-	00	—
E4	GPO Pin Select	00	RW
E5	GPIO I/O Select 1	00	RW
E6	GPIO I/O Select 2	00	RW
E7	GPO Output Type	00	RW
E8-FF	-reserved-	00	—

I/O Space Power Management Registers

Offset	Basic Control / Status Registers	Default	Acc
1-0	Power Management Status	0000	**WC**
3-2	Power Management Enable	0000	RW
5-4	Power Management Control	0000	RW
6-7	-reserved-	00	—
B-8	Power Management Timer	0000 0000	RW
C-F	-reserved-	00	—

Offset	Processor Registers	Default	Acc
13-10	Processor and PCI Bus Control	0000 0000	RW
14	Processor LVL2	00	**RO**
15	Processor LVL3	00	**RO**
16-1F	-reserved-	00	—

Offset	General Purpose Registers	Default	Acc
21-20	General Purpose Status	0000	**WC**
23-22	General Purpose SCI Enable	0000	RW
25-24	General Purpose SMI Enable	0000	RW
26-27	-reserved-	00	—

Offset	Generic Registers	Default	Acc
29-28	Global Status	0000	**WC**
2B-2A	Global Enable	0000	RW
2D-2C	Global Control	**0010**	RW
2E	-reserved-	00	—
2F	SMI Command	00	RW
33-30	Primary Activity Detect Status	0000 0000	**WC**
37-34	Primary Activity Detect Enable	0000 0000	RW
3B-38	GP Timer Reload Enable	0000 0000	RW
3C-3F	-reserved-	00	—

Offset	General Purpose I/O Registers	Default	Acc
40	Extended I/O Trap Status	00	**WC**
41	-reserved-	00	—
42	Extended I/O Trap Enable	00	RW
43-44	-reserved-	00	—
45	SMI / IRQ / Resume Status	00	**RO**
46-47	-reserved-	00	—
4B-48	GPI Port Input Value	**input**	**RO**
4F-4C	GPO Port Output Value	**FFFFCFFF**	RW
50	GPI Pin Change Status	00	RW
51	-reserved-	00	—
52	GPI Pin Change SCI/SMI Select	00	RW
53-57	-reserved-	00	—
59-58	I/O Trap PCI I/O Address	0000	**RO**
5A	I/O Trap PCI Command / Byte Ena	00	**RO**
5B-FF	-reserved-	00	—

I/O Space System Management Bus Registers

Offset	System Management Bus	Default	Acc
0	SMBus Host Status	00	**WC**
1	SMBus Slave Status	00	RW
2	SMBus Host Control	00	RW
3	SMBus Host Command	00	RW
4	SMBus Host Address	00	RW
5	SMBus Host Data 0	00	RW
6	SMBus Host Data 1	00	RW
7	SMBus Block Data	00	RW
8	SMBus Slave Control	00	RW
9	SMBus Shadow Command	00	**RO**
A-B	SMBus Slave Event	0000	RW
C-D	SMBus Slave Data	0000	**RO**
E-F	-reserved-	00	—

Device 18 Function 1 Registers – IDE Controller

Configuration Space IDE Header Registers

Offset	Configuration Space Header	Default	Acc
1-0	Vendor ID	**1106**	RO
3-2	Device ID	**0571**	RO
5-4	Command	**0080**	RO
7-6	Status	**0290**	**RW**
8	Revision ID	**nn**	RO
9	Programming Interface	**85**	**RW**
A	Sub Class Code	**01**	RO
B	Base Class Code	**01**	RO
C-F	-reserved-	00	—
13-10	Base Address – Pri Data / Command	**000001F1**	**RW**
17-14	Base Address – Pri Control / Status	**000003F5**	**RW**
1B-18	Base Address – Sec Data / Command	**00000171**	**RW**
1F-1C	Base Address – Sec Control / Status	**00000375**	**RW**
23-20	Base Address – Bus Master Control	**0000CC01**	**RW**
24-2B	-reserved- (unassigned)	00	—
2D-2C	Sub Vendor ID	0000	RO
2F-2E	Sub Device ID	0000	RO
30-33	-reserved- (expan ROM base addr)	00	—
34	Capability Pointer	**C0**	RO
35-3B	-reserved- (unassigned)	00	—
3C	Interrupt Line	**0E**	RO
3D	Interrupt Pin	00	RO
3E	Minimum Grant	00	RO
3F	Maximum Latency	00	RO

Configuration Space IDE-Specific Registers

Offset	Configuration Space IDE Registers	Default	Acc
40	IDE Chip Enable	**08**	RW
41	IDE Configuration I	00	RW
42	IDE Configuration II	**C0**	**RW**
43	IDE FIFO Configuration	**3A**	RW
44	IDE Miscellaneous Control 1	**08**	RW
45	IDE Miscellaneous Control 2	**03**	RW
46	IDE Miscellaneous Control 3	**C0**	RW
4B-48	IDE Drive Timing Control	**A8A8A8A8**	RW
4C	IDE Address Setup Time	**FF**	RW
4D	-reserved- (do not program)	00	**RW**
4E-4F	CD: -reserved-	00	—
4E	CE: Sec Non-1F0 Port Access Timing	**B6**	RW
4F	CE: Pri Non-1F0 Port Access Timing	**B6**	RW

Configuration Space IDE-Specific Registers (continued)

Offset	Configuration Space IDE Registers	Default	Acc
53-50	UltraDMA Extended Timing Control	**07070707**	RW
54	UltraDMA FIFO Control	**04**	RW
55-5F	-reserved-	00	—
61-60	IDE Primary Sector Size	**0200**	RW
62-67	-reserved-	00	—
69-68	IDE Secondary Sector Size	**0200**	RW
69-6F	-reserved-	00	—
70	IDE Primary Status	00	**RO**
71	IDE Primary Interrupt Control	**01**	RW
72-77	-reserved-	00	—
78	IDE Secondary Status	00	**RO**
79	IDE Secondary Interrupt Control	**01**	RW
7A-7F	-reserved-	00	—
83-80	IDE Primary S/G Descriptor Address	0000 0000	**RO**
84-87	-reserved-	00	—
8B-88	IDE Secondary S/G Descriptor Addr	0000 0000	**RO**
8C-BF	-reserved-	00	—
C3-C0	Power Management Capabilities	**0002 0001**	**RO**
C7-C4	Power State	0000 0000	**RO**
C8-CF	-reserved-	00	—

Offset	IDE Back Door Registers	Default	Acc
D0	Back Door – Revision ID	**06**	RW
D1	-reserved-	00	—
D3-D2	Back Door – Device ID	**0571**	RW
D5-D4	Back Door – Sub Vender ID	0000	RW
D7-D6	Back Door – Sub Device ID	0000	RW
D8-FF	-reserved-	00	—

I/O Registers – IDE Controller (SFF 8038 v1.0 Compliant

Offset	IDE I/O Registers	Default	Acc
0	Primary Channel Command	00	RW
1	-reserved-	00	—
2	Primary Channel Status	00	**WC**
3	-reserved-	00	—
4-7	Primary Channel PRD Table Addr	00	RW
8	Secondary Channel Command	00	RW
9	-reserved-	00	—
A	Secondary Channel Status	00	**WC**
B	-reserved-	00	—
C-F	Secondary Channel PRD Table Addr	00	RW

Device 17 Function 2 Registers – USB Ports 0-1

Configuration Space USB Header Registers

Offset	Configuration Space Header	Default	Acc
1-0	Vendor ID	**1106**	RO
3-2	Device ID	**3038**	RO
5-4	Command	0000	**RW**
7-6	Status	**0200**	**WC**
8	Revision ID	**nn**	RO
9	Programming Interface	00	RO
A	Sub Class Code	**03**	RO
B	Base Class Code	**0C**	RO
C-1F	-reserved-	00	—
23-20	USB I/O Register Base Address	**00000301**	**RW**
24-2B	-reserved-	00	—
2D-2C	Sub Vendor ID	0000	RO
2F-2E	Sub Device ID	0000	RO
30-3B	-reserved-	00	—
3C	Interrupt Line	00	**RW**
3D	Interrupt Pin	**04**	RO
3E-3F	-reserved-	00	—

Configuration Space USB-Specific Registers

Offset	USB Control	Default	Acc
40	USB Miscellaneous Control 1	00	RW
41	USB Miscellaneous Control 2	**10**	RW
42-43	-reserved-	00	—
44-45	-reserved- (test, do not program)	00	RW
46-47	-reserved- (test)	00	**RO**
48	CE: USB Miscellaneous Control 3	00	RW
48	CD: -reserved-	00	—
49	MIA Analog Control	00	RW
4A-5F	-reserved-	00	—
60	USB Serial Bus Release Number	**10**	**RO**
61-7F	-reserved-	00	—
83-80	PM Capability	**0002 0001**	**RO**
84	PM Capability Status	00	RW
85-BF	-reserved-	00	—
C1-C0	USB Legacy Support	**2000**	RW
C2-FF	-reserved-	00	—

I/O Registers – USB Controller

Offset	USB I/O Registers	Default	Acc
1-0	USB Command	0000	RW
3-2	USB Status	0000	**WC**
5-4	USB Interrupt Enable	0000	RW
7-6	Frame Number	0000	RW
B-8	Frame List Base Address	00000000	RW
C	Start Of Frame Modify	**40**	RW
11-10	Port 0 Status / Control	**0080**	**WC**
13-12	Port 1 Status / Control	**0080**	**WC**
14-1F	-reserved-	00	—

Device 17 Function 3 Registers – USB Ports 2-3

Configuration Space USB Header Registers

Offset	Configuration Space Header	Default	Acc
1-0	Vendor ID	**1106**	RO
3-2	Device ID	**3038**	RO
5-4	Command	0000	**RW**
7-6	Status	**0200**	**WC**
8	Revision ID	**nn**	RO
9	Programming Interface	00	RO
A	Sub Class Code	**03**	RO
B	Base Class Code	**0C**	RO
C-1F	-reserved-	00	—
23-20	USB I/O Register Base Address	**00000301**	**RW**
24-2B	-reserved-	00	—
2D-2C	Sub Vendor ID	0000	RO
2F-2E	Sub Device ID	0000	RO
30-3B	-reserved-	00	—
3C	Interrupt Line	00	**RW**
3D	Interrupt Pin	**04**	RO
3E-3F	-reserved-	00	—

Configuration Space USB-Specific Registers

Offset	USB Control	Default	Acc
40	USB Miscellaneous Control 1	00	RW
41	USB Miscellaneous Control 2	**10**	RW
42-43	-reserved-	00	—
44-45	-reserved- (test, do not program)	00	RW
46-47	-reserved- (test)	00	**RO**
48	CE: USB Miscellaneous Control 3	00	RW
48	CD: -reserved-	00	—
49	MIA Analog Control	00	RW
4A-5F	-reserved-	00	—
60	USB Serial Bus Release Number	**10**	**RO**
61-7F	-reserved-	00	—
83-80	PM Capability	**0002 0001**	**RO**
84	PM Capability Status	00	RW
85-BF	-reserved-	00	—
C1-C0	USB Legacy Support	**2000**	RW
C2-FF	-reserved-	00	—

I/O Registers - USB Controller

Offset	USB I/O Registers	Default	Acc
1-0	USB Command	0000	RW
3-2	USB Status	0000	**WC**
5-4	USB Interrupt Enable	0000	RW
7-6	Frame Number	0000	RW
B-8	Frame List Base Address	00000000	RW
C	Start Of Frame Modify	**40**	RW
11-10	Port 2 Status / Control	**0080**	**WC**
13-12	Port 3 Status / Control	**0080**	**WC**
14-1F	-reserved-	00	—

Device 17 Function 4 Registers – USB Ports 4-5

Configuration Space USB Header Registers

Offset	Configuration Space Header	Default	Acc
1-0	Vendor ID	**1106**	RO
3-2	Device ID	**3038**	RO
5-4	Command	0000	**RW**
7-6	Status	**0200**	**WC**
8	Revision ID	**nn**	RO
9	Programming Interface	00	RO
A	Sub Class Code	**03**	RO
B	Base Class Code	**0C**	RO
C-1F	-reserved-	00	—
23-20	USB I/O Register Base Address	**00000301**	**RW**
24-2B	-reserved-	00	—
2D-2C	Sub Vendor ID	0000	RO
2F-2E	Sub Device ID	0000	RO
30-3B	-reserved-	00	—
3C	Interrupt Line	00	**RW**
3D	Interrupt Pin	**04**	RO
3E-3F	-reserved-	00	—

Configuration Space USB-Specific Registers

Offset	USB Control	Default	Acc
40	USB Miscellaneous Control 1	00	RW
41	USB Miscellaneous Control 2	**10**	RW
42-43	-reserved-	00	—
44-45	-reserved- (test, do not program)	00	RW
46-47	-reserved- (test)	00	**RO**
48	CE: USB Miscellaneous Control 3	00	RW
48	CD: -reserved-	00	—
49	MIA Analog Control	00	RW
4A-5F	-reserved-	00	—
60	USB Serial Bus Release Number	**10**	**RO**
61-7F	-reserved-	00	—
83-80	PM Capability	**0002 0001**	**RO**
84	PM Capability Status	00	RW
85-BF	-reserved-	00	—
C1-C0	USB Legacy Support	**2000**	RW
C2-FF	-reserved-	00	—

I/O Registers - USB Controller

Offset	USB I/O Registers	Default	Acc
1-0	USB Command	0000	RW
3-2	USB Status	0000	**WC**
5-4	USB Interrupt Enable	0000	RW
7-6	Frame Number	0000	RW
B-8	Frame List Base Address	00000000	RW
C	Start Of Frame Modify	**40**	RW
11-10	Port 4 Status / Control	**0080**	**WC**
13-12	Port 5 Status / Control	**0080**	**WC**
14-1F	-reserved-	00	—

Device 17 Function 5 & 6 Registers – AC/MC97 Codecs

Function 5 Configuration Space AC97 Header Registers

Offset	Configuration Space Header	Default	Acc
1-0	Vendor ID	**1106**	RO
3-2	Device ID	**3059**	RO
5-4	Command	0000	**RW**
7-6	Status	**0210**	RO
8	Revision ID **(CD default = 10h)**	**30 (CE)**	RO
9	Programming Interface	00	RO
A	Sub Class Code	**01**	RO
B	Base Class Code	**04**	RO
C-F	-reserved-	00	—
13-10	Base Address 0 - SGD Control/Status	**0000 0001**	**RW**
17-14	Base Address 1 (reserved)	0000 0000	—
1B-18	Base Address 2 (reserved)	0000 0000	—
1F-1C	Base Address 3 (reserved)	0000 0000	—
23-20	Base Address 4 (reserved)	0000 0000	—
27-24	Base Address 5 (reserved)	0000 0000	—
28-29	-reserved-	00	—
2F-2C	Subsystem ID / SubVendor ID	0000 0000	**RW**
33-30	Expansion ROM (reserved)	0000 0000	—
34	Capture Pointer	**C0**	**RW**
35-3B	-reserved-	00	—
3C	Interrupt Line	00	**RW**
3D	Interrupt Pin	**03**	RO
3E	Minimum Grant	00	RO
3F	Maximum Latency	00	RO

Function 6 Configuration Space MC97 Header Registers

Offset	Configuration Space Header	Default	Acc
1-0	Vendor ID	**1106**	RO
3-2	Device ID	**3068**	RO
5-4	Command	0000	**RW**
7-6	Status	**0200**	RO
8	Revision ID **(CD default = 50h)**	**70 (CE)**	RO
9	Programming Interface	00	RO
A	Sub Class Code	**80**	RO
B	Base Class Code	**07**	RO
C-F	-reserved-	00	—
13-10	Base Address 0 - SGD Control/Status	**0000 0001**	**RW**
17-14	Base Address 1 (reserved)	0000 0000	—
1B-18	Base Address 2 (reserved)	0000 0000	—
1F-1C	Base Address 3 (reserved)	0000 0000	—
23-20	Base Address 4 (reserved)	0000 0000	—
27-24	Base Address 5 (reserved)	0000 0000	—
28-29	-reserved-	00	—
2F-2C	Subsystem ID / SubVendor ID	0000 0000	**RW**
33-30	Expansion ROM (reserved)	0000 0000	—
34	Capture Pointer	**D0**	**RW**
35-3B	-reserved-	00	—
3C	Interrupt Line	00	**RW**
3D	Interrupt Pin	**03**	RO
3E	Minimum Grant	00	RO
3F	Maximum Latency	00	RO

Configuration Space Audio Codec-Specific Registers

Offset	Audio Codec Link Control	Default	Acc
40	AC-Link Interface Status	00	**RO**
41	AC-Link Interface Control	00	RW
42	Function Enable	00	RW
43	-reserved-	00	—
44	MC97 Interface Control	00	**RO**
45-47	-reserved-	00	—
48	Value Change Rate Control	00	RW
49	S/PDIF Control (CE Only)	00	RW
4A-BF	-reserved-	00	—
C3-C0	Power Management Capability	**0002 0001**	**RO**
C7-C4	Power State	0000 0000	RW
C8-FF	-reserved-	00	—

Configuration Space Modem Codec-Specific Registers

Offset	Modem Codec Link Control	Default	Acc
40	AC-Link Interface Status	00	**RO**
41	AC-Link Interface Control	00	RW
42	Function Enable	00	**RO**
43	-reserved-	00	—
44	MC97 Interface Control	00	RW
45-47	-reserved-	00	—
48	Value Change Rate Control	00	**RO**
49	S/PDIF Control (CE Only)	00	**RO**
4A-CF	-reserved-	00	—
D3-D0	Power Management Capability	**0002 0001**	**RO**
D7-D4	Power State	0000 0000	RW
D8-FF	-reserved-	00	—

Function 5 I/O Base 0 Registers – AC97 Audio S/G DMA

Offset	AC97 SGD I/O Registers	Default	Acc
x0	SGD Channel x Status	00	**WC**
x1	SGD Channel x Control	00	RW
x2	SGD Channel x Left Volume	**3F**	RW
x3	SGD Channel x Right Volume	**3F**	RW
x7-x4	SGD Channel x Table Pointer Base SGD Channel x Current Address	0000 0000	WR RD
xB-x8	Stop Index / Data Type / Sample Rate	**FF0F FFFF**	RW
xF-xC	SGD Channel x Current Count	0000 0000	**RO**
40	SGD 3D Channel Status	00	**WC**
41	SGD 3D Channel Control	00	RW
42	SGD 3D Channel Format	00	RW
43	SGD 3D Channel Scratch	00	RW
47-44	SGD 3D Channel Table Pointer Base SGD 3D Channel Current Address	0000 0000	WR RD
4B-48	SGD 3D Channel Slot Select	**FF00 0000**	RW
4F-4C	SGD 3D Channel Current Count	0000 0000	**RO**
50-5F	-reserved-	00	—
60	SGD Write Channel 0 Status	00	**WC**
61	SGD Write Channel 0 Control	00	RW
62	SGD Write Channel 0 Format	00	RW
63	SGD Write Channel 0 Select	00	RW
67-64	SGD Write Channel 0 Table Ptr Base SGD Write Channel 0 Current Addr	0000 0000	WR RD
6B-68	SGD Write Channel 0 Stop Index	**FF00 0000**	RW
6F-6C	SGD Write Channel 0 Current Count	0000 0000	**RO**
70	SGD Write Channel 1 Status	00	**WC**
71	SGD Write Channel 1 Control	00	RW
72	SGD Write Channel 1 Format	00	RW
73	SGD Write Channel 1 Select	00	RW
77-74	SGD Write Channel 1 Table Ptr Base SGD Write Channel 1 Current Addr	0000 0000	WR RD
7B-78	SGD Write Channel 1 Stop Index	**FF00 0000**	RW
7F-7C	SGD Write Channel 1 Current Count	0000 0000	**RO**

Function 6 I/O Base 0 Registers – MC97 Modem S/G DMA

Offset	MC97 SGD I/O Registers	Default	Acc
0-7	-reserved-	00	—
8-F	-reserved-	00	—
10-17	-reserved-	00	—
18-1F	-reserved-	00	—
20-27	-reserved-	00	—
28-2F	-reserved-	00	—
30-37	-reserved-	00	—
38-3F	-reserved-	00	—
40	SGD Read Channel Status	00	**WC**
41	SGD Read Channel Control	00	RW
42	SGD Read Channel Type	00	RW
43	-reserved-	00	—
47-44	SGD Read Chan Table Pointer Base SGD Read Channel Current Address	0000 0000	WR RD
4B-48	-reserved- (Test)	0000 0000	**RO**
4F-4C	SGD Read Channel Current Count	0000 0000	**RO**
50	SGD Write Channel Status	00	**WC**
51	SGD Write Channel Control	00	RW
52	SGD Write Channel Type	00	RW
53	-reserved-	00	—
57-54	SGD Write Channel Table Ptr Base SGD Write Channel Current Address	0000 0000	WR RD
5B-58	Reserved (Test)	0000 0000	**RO**
5F-5C	SGD Write Channel Current Count	0000 0000	**RO**
60-7F	-reserved-	00	—

Offset	AC97 / Audio Codec I/O Registers	Default	Acc
83-80	AC97 Controller Command / Status	0000 0000	RW
87-84	SGD Global IRQ Shadow	0000 0000	**RO**
8B-88	Modem Codec GPI Intr Status / GPIO	0000 0000	**RO**
8F-8C	Modem Codec GPI Interrupt Enable	0000 0000	**RO**
90-9F	Shadow PCI Config Registers 40-4F	n/a	**RO**
A0-FF	-reserved-	00	—

Offset	AC97 / Modem Codec I/O Registers	Default	Acc
83-80	AC97 Controller Command / Status	0000 0000	RW
87-84	SGD Global IRQ Shadow	0000 0000	**RO**
8B-88	Modem Codec GPI Intr Status / GPIO	0000 0000	**WC**
8F-8C	Modem Codec GPI Interrupt Enable	0000 0000	RW
90-9F	Shadow PCI Config Registers 40-4F	n/a	**RO**
A0-FF	-reserved-	00	—

Device 18 Function 0 Registers - LAN

Configuration Space LAN Header Registers

Offset	Configuration Space Header	Default	Acc
1-0	Vendor ID	**1106**	RO
3-2	Device ID	**3065**	RO
5-4	Command	0000	RO
7-6	Status	**0470**	**WC**
8	Revision ID	**40**	RO
9	Programming Interface	00	RO
A	Sub Class Code	00	RO
B	Base Class Code	00	RO
C	Cache Line Size	00	**RW**
D	Latency Timer	00	**RW**
E	Header Type	00	RO
F	BIST	00	RO
13-10	I/O Base Address	0000 0000	RW
17-14	Memory Base Address	0000 0000	RW
18-27	-reserved-	00	—
2B-28	Card Bus CIS Pointer	0000 0000	RW
2C-2F	-reserved-	00	—
33-30	Expansion ROM Base Address	0000 0000	RW
34	Capabilities Offset	**40**	**RO**
35-3C	-reserved-	00	—
3D	Interrupt Pin	**01**	**RO**
3E-3F	-reserved-	00	—

Configuration Space LAN Device Specific Registers

Offset	Power Management	Default	Acc
40	Capability ID	**01**	**RO**
41	Next Item Pointer	00	**RO**
43-42	Power Management Configuration	**0002**	**RO**
47-44	Power Management Control / Status	0000 0000	**WC**
48-FF	-reserved-	00	**—**

I/O Space LAN Registers

Offset	Power Management	Default	Acc
5-0	Ethernet Address		RW
6	Receive Control	00	RW
7	Transmit Control	**08**	RW
8	Command 0	00	RW
9	Command 1	00	RW
A-B	-reserved-	00	—
C	Interrupt Status 0	00	RW
D	Interrupt Status 1	00	RW
E	Interrupt Mask 0	00	RW
F	Interrupt Mask 1	00	RW
17-10	Multicast Address		RW
1B-18	Receive Address		RW
1F-1C	Transmit Address		RW
23-20	Receive Status	0000 0000	RW
27-24	Receive Data Buffer Control	0000 0000	**RO**
2B-28	Receive Data Buffer Start Address		**RO**
2F-2C	Receive Data Buffer Branch Address		**RO**
30-3F	-reserved-	00	—
43-40	Transmit Status	0000 0000	RW
47-44	Transmit Data Buffer Control	0000 0000	**RO**
4B-48	Transmit Data Buffer Start Address		**RO**
4F-4C	Transmit Data Buffer Branch Addr		**RO**
50-6B	-reserved-	00	—
6C	PHY Address	**01**	RW
6D	MII Status	**13**	RW
6E	Buffer Control 0	00	RW
6F	Buffer Control 1	00	RW
70	MII Management Port Command	00	RW
71	MII Management Port Address	**81**	RW
73-72	PHY Data	0000	**RW**
74	EEPROM Command / Status	00	RW
75-77	-reserved-	00	—
78	EEPROM Control	00	RW

I/O Space LAN Registers (continued)

Offset	Power Management	Default	Acc
79	Configuration 1	00	RW
7A	Configuration 2	00	RW
7B	Configuration 3	00	RW
7C-7F	-reserved-	00	—
80	Miscellaneous 1	00	RW
81	Miscellaneous 2	00	RW
82	-reserved-	00	—
83	Sticky Hardware Control	00	RW
84	MII Interrupt Status	00	**WC**
85	-reserved-	00	—
86	MII Interrupt Mask	00	RW
87-8B	-reserved-	00	—
8D-8C	Flash Address	0000	RW
8E	-reserved-	00	—
8F	Flash Write Data Output	00	RW
90	Flash Read / Write Command	00	RW
91	Flash Write Data Input	00	**RO**
92	-reserved-	00	—
93	Flash Checksum	00	RW
95-94	Suspend Mode MII Address	0000	RW
96	Suspend Mode PHY Address	00	RW
97	-reserved-	00	—
99-98	Pause Timer	0000	RW
9A	Pause Status	00	RW
9B	-reserved-	00	—
9D-9C	Soft Timer 0	0000	RW
9F-9E	Soft Timer 1	0000	RW
A0/A4	Wake On LAN Control Set / Clear	00 / 00	RW
A1/A5	Power Configuration Set / Clear	00 / 00	RW
A2/A6	-reserved- (do not program)	00 / 00	—
A3/A7	Wake On LAN Config Set / Clear	00 / 00	RW
A8-AF	-reserved-	00	—
B3-B0	Pattern CRC 0	0000 0000	RW
B7-B4	Pattern CRC 1	0000 0000	RW
BB-B8	Pattern CRC 2	0000 0000	RW
BF-BC	Pattern CRC 3	0000 0000	RW
CF-C0	Byte Mask 0	0000 0000	RW
DF-D0	Byte Mask 1	0000 0000	RW
EF-E0	Byte Mask 2	0000 0000	RW
FF-F0	Byte Mask 3	0000 0000	RW

Register Descriptions

Legacy I/O Ports

This group of registers includes the DMA Controllers, Interrupt Controllers, and Timer/Counters as well as a number of miscellaneous ports originally implemented using discrete logic on original PC/AT motherboards. All of the registers listed are integrated on-chip. These registers are implemented in a precise manner for backwards compatibility with previous generations of PC hardware. These registers are listed for information purposes only. Detailed descriptions of the actions and programming of these registers are included in numerous industry publications (duplication of that information here is beyond the scope of this document). All of these registers reside in I/O space.

Port 61 - Misc Functions & Speaker Control ..... RW

7-6 Reserved ..... always reads 0

5 Timer/Counter 2 Output ..... RO

This bit reflects the output of Timer/Counter 2 without any synchronization.

4 Refresh Detected ..... RO

This bit toggles on every rising edge of the ISA bus REFRESH# signal.

3-2 Reserved ..... RW, default=0

1 Speaker Enable ..... RW

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable Timer/Ctr 2 output to drive SPKR pin

0 Timer/Counter 2 Enable ..... RW

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable Timer/Counter 2

Port 92h - System Control ..... RW

7-6 Hard Disk Activity LED Status

0 Off ..... default

1-3 On

5-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3 Power-On Password Bytes Inaccessable ... default=0

2 Reserved ..... always reads 0

1 A20 Address Line Enable

0 A20 disabled / forced 0 (real mode) ..... default

1 A20 address line enabled

0 High Speed Reset

0 Normal

1 Briefly pulse system reset to switch from protected mode to real mode

Keyboard Controller I/O Registers

The keyboard controller handles the keyboard and mouse interfaces. Two ports are used: port 60 and port 64. Reads from port 64 return a status byte. Writes to port 64h are command codes (see command code list following the register descriptions). Input and output data is transferred via port 60.

A "Control" register is also available. It is accessable by writing commands 20h / 60h to the command port (port 64h); The control byte is written by first sending 60h to the command port, then sending the control byte value. The control register may be read by sending a command of 20h to port 64h, waiting for "Output Buffer Full" status = 1, then reading the control byte value from port 60h.

Traditional (non-integrated) keyboard controllers have an "Input Port" and an "Output Port" with specific pins dedicated to certain functions and other pins available for general purpose I/O. Specific commands are provided to set these pins high and low. All outputs are "open-collector" so to allow input on one of these pins, the output value for that pin would be set high (non-driving) and the desired input value read on the input port. These ports are defined as follows:

Bit	Input Port	Lo Code	Hi Code
0	P10 - Keyboard Data In	B0	B8
1	P11 - Mouse Data In	B1	B9
2	P12 - undefined	B2	BA
3	P13 - undefined	B3	BB
4	P14 - undefined	B6	BE
5	P15 - undefined	B7	BF
6	P16 - undefined	–	–
7	P17 - undefined	–	–

Bit	Output Port	Lo Code	Hi Code
0	P20 - SYSRST (1=execute reset)	–	–
1	P21 - GATEA20 (1=A20 enabled)	–	–
2	P22 - Mouse Data Out	B4	BC
3	P23 - Mouse Clock Out	B5	BD
4	P24 - Keyboard OBF Interrupt (IRQ1)	–	–
5	P25 - Mouse OBF Interrupt (IRQ 12)	–	–
6	P26 - Keyboard Clock Out	–	–
7	P27 - Keyboard Data Out	–	–

Bit	Test Port	Lo Code	Hi Code
0	T0 - Keyboard Clock In	–	–
1	T1 - Mouse Clock In	–	–

Note: Command code C0h transfers input port data to the output buffer. Command code D0h copies output port values to the output buffer. Command code E0h transfers test input port data to the output buffer.

Port 60 - Keyboard Controller Input Buffer..... WO

Only write to port 60h if port 64h bit-1 = 0 (1=full).

Port 60 - Keyboard Controller Output Buffer..... RO

Only read from port 60h if port 64h bit-0 = 1 (0=empty).

Port 64 - Keyboard / Mouse Status ..... RO

7 Parity Error
- 0 No parity error (odd parity received) ..... default
- 1 Even parity occurred on last byte received from keyboard / mouse

6 General Receive / Transmit Timeout
- 0 No error ..... default
- 1 Error

5 Mouse Output Buffer Full
- 0 Mouse output buffer empty..... default
- 1 Mouse output buffer holds mouse data

4 Keylock Status
- 0 Locked
- 1 Free

3 Command / Data
- 0 Last write was data write ..... default
- 1 Last write was command write

2 System Flag
- 0 Power-On Default..... default
- 1 Self Test Successful

1 Input Buffer Full
- 0 Input Buffer Empty..... default
- 1 Input Buffer Full

0 Keyboard Output Buffer Full
- 0 Keyboard Output Buffer Empty ..... default
- 1 Keyboard Output Buffer Full

KBC Control Register .....(R/W via Commands 20h/60h)

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6 PC Compatibility
- 0 Disable scan conversion
- 1 Convert scan codes to PC format; convert 2-byte break sequences to 1-byte PC-compatible break codes ..... default

5 Mouse Disable
- 0 Enable Mouse Interface ..... default
- 1 Disable Mouse Interface

4 Keyboard Disable
- 0 Enable Keyboard Interface ..... default
- 1 Disable Keyboard Interface

3 Reserved ..... always reads 0

2 System Flag ..... default=0

This bit may be read back as status register bit-2

1 Mouse Interrupt Enable
- 0 Disable mouse interrupts ..... default
- 1 Generate interrupt on IRQ12 when mouse data comes in output bufer

0 Keyboard Interrupt Enable
- 0 Disable Keyboard Interrupts..... default
- 1 Generate interrupt on IRQ1 when output buffer has been written.

Port 64 - Keyboard / Mouse Command..... WO

This port is used to send commands to the keyboard / mouse controller. The command codes recognized by the VT8233 are listed n the table below.

Note: The VT8233 Keyboard Controller is compatible with the VIA VT82C42 Industry-Standard Keyboard Controller except that due to its integrated nature, many of the input and output port pins are not available externally for use as general purpose I/O pins (even though P13-P16 are set on power-up as strapping options). In other words, many of the commands below are provided and "work", but otherwise perform no useful function (e.g., commands that set P12-P17 high or low). Also note that setting P10-11, P22-23, P26-27, and T0-1 high or low directly serves no useful purpose, since these bits are used to implement the keyboard and mouse ports and are directly controlled by keyboard controller logic.

Table 8. Keyboard Controller Command Codes

Code	Keyboard Command Code Description
20h	Read Control Byte (next byte is Control Byte)
21-3Fh	Read SRAM Data (next byte is Data Byte)
60h	Write Control Byte (next byte is Control Byte)
61-7Fh	Write SRAM Data (next byte is Data Byte)
9xh	Write low nibble (bits 0-3) to P10-P13
A1h	Output Keyboard Controller Version #
A4h	Test if Password is installed (always returns F1h to indicate not installed)
A7h	Disable Mouse Interface
A8h	Enable Mouse Interface
A9h	Mouse Interface Test (puts test results in port 60h) (value: 0=OK, 1=clk stuck low, 2=clk stuck high, 3=data stuck lo, 4=data stuck hi, FF=general error)
AAh	KBC self test (returns 55h if OK, FCh if not)
ABh	Keyboard Interface Test (see A9h Mouse Test)
ADh	Disable Keyboard Interface
AEh	Enable Keyboard Interface
AFh	Return Version #
B0h	Set P10 low
B1h	Set P11 low
B2h	Set P12 low
B3h	Set P13 low
B4h	Set P22 low
B5h	Set P23 low
B6h	Set P14 low
B7h	Set P15 low
B8h	Set P10 high
B9h	Set P11 high
BAh	Set P12 high
BBh	Set P13 high
BCh	Set P22 high
BDh	Set P23 high
BEh	Set P14 high
BFh	Set P15 high
C0h	Read input port (read P10-17 input data to the output buffer)
C1h	Poll input port low (read input data on P11-13 repeatably & put in bits 5-7 of status
C2h	Poll input port high (same except P15-17)
C8h	Unblock P22-23 (use before D1 to change active mode)
C9h	Reblock P22-23 (protection mechanism for D1)
CAh	Read mode (output KBC mode info to port 60 output buffer (bit-0=0 if ISA, 1 if PS/2)
D0h	Read Output Port (copy P10-17 output port values to port 60)
D1h	Write Output Port (data byte following is written to keyboard output port as if it came from keyboard)
D2h	Write Keyboard Output Buffer & clear status bit-5 (write following byte to keyboard)
D3h	Write Mouse Output Buffer & set status bit-5 (write following byte to mouse; put value in mouse input buffer so it appears to have come from the mouse)
D4h	Write Mouse (write following byte to mouse)
E0h	Read test inputs (T0-1 read to bits 0-1 of resp byte)
Exh	Set P23-P21 per command bits 3-1
Fxh	Pulse P23-P20 low for 6usec per command bits 3-0

All other codes not listed are undefined.

DMA Controller I/O Registers

Ports 00-0F - Master DMA Controller

Channels 0-3 of the Master DMA Controller control System DMA Channels 0-3. There are 16 Master DMA Controller registers:

I/O Address Bits 15-0	Register Name	
0000 0000 000x 0000	Ch 0 Base / Current Address	RW
0000 0000 000x 0001	Ch 0 Base / Current Count	RW
0000 0000 000x 0010	Ch 1 Base / Current Address	RW
0000 0000 000x 0011	Ch 1 Base / Current Count	RW
0000 0000 000x 0100	Ch 2 Base / Current Address	RW
0000 0000 000x 0101	Ch 2 Base / Current Count	RW
0000 0000 000x 0110	Ch 3 Base / Current Address	RW
0000 0000 000x 0111	Ch 3 Base / Current Count	RW
0000 0000 000x 1000	Status / Command	RW
0000 0000 000x 1001	Write Request	WO
0000 0000 000x 1010	Write Single Mask	WO
0000 0000 000x 1011	Write Mode	WO
0000 0000 000x 1100	Clear Byte Pointer F/F	WO
0000 0000 000x 1101	Master Clear	WO
0000 0000 000x 1110	Clear Mask	WO
0000 0000 000x 1111	R/W All Mask Bits	RW

Ports C0-DF - Slave DMA Controller

Channels 0-3 of the Slave DMA Controller control System DMA Channels 4-7. There are 16 Slave DMA Controller registers:

I/O Address Bits 15-0	Register Name	
0000 0000 1100 000x	Ch 4 Base / Current Address	RW
0000 0000 1100 001x	Ch 4 Base / Current Count	RW
0000 0000 1100 010x	Ch 5 Base / Current Address	RW
0000 0000 1100 011x	Ch 5 Base / Current Count	RW
0000 0000 1100 100x	Ch 6 Base / Current Address	RW
0000 0000 1100 101x	Ch 6 Base / Current Count	RW
0000 0000 1100 110x	Ch 7 Base / Current Address	RW
0000 0000 1100 111x	Ch 7 Base / Current Count	RW
0000 0000 1101 000x	Status / Command	RW
0000 0000 1101 001x	Write Request	WO
0000 0000 1101 010x	Write Single Mask	WO
0000 0000 1101 011x	Write Mode	WO
0000 0000 1101 100x	Clear Byte Pointer F/F	WO
0000 0000 1101 101x	Master Clear	WO
0000 0000 1101 110x	Clear Mask	WO
0000 0000 1101 111x	Read/Write All Mask Bits	WO

Note that not all bits of the address are decoded.

The Master and Slave DMA Controllers are compatible with the Intel 8237 DMA Controller chip. Detailed description of 8237 DMA controller operation can be obtained from the Intel Peripheral Components Data Book and numerous other industry publications.

Ports 80-8F - DMA Page Registers

There are eight DMA Page Registers, one for each DMA channel. These registers provide bits 16-23 of the 24-bit address for each DMA channel (bits 0-15 are stored in registers in the Master and Slave DMA Controllers). They are located at the following I/O Port addresses:

I/O Address Bits 15-0	Register Name
0000 0000 1000 0111	Channel 0 DMA Page (M-0).....RW
0000 0000 1000 0011	Channel 1 DMA Page (M-1).....RW
0000 0000 1000 0001	Channel 2 DMA Page (M-2).....RW
0000 0000 1000 0010	Channel 3 DMA Page (M-3).....RW
0000 0000 1000 1111	Channel 4 DMA Page (S-0).....RW
0000 0000 1000 1011	Channel 5 DMA Page (S-1).....RW
0000 0000 1000 1001	Channel 6 DMA Page (S-2).....RW
0000 0000 1000 1010	Channel 7 DMA Page (S-3) .....RW

DMA Controller Shadow Registers

The DMA Controller shadow registers are enabled by setting function 0 Rx77 bit 0. If the shadow registers are enabled, they are read back at the indicated I/O port instead of the standard DMA controller registers (writes are unchanged).

Port 0 –Channel 0 Base Address .....RO
Port 1 –Channel 0 Byte Count.....RO
Port 2 –Channel 1 Base Address .....RO
Port 3 –Channel 1 Byte Count.....RO
Port 4 –Channel 2 Base Address .....RO
Port 5 –Channel 2 Byte Count.....RO
Port 6 –Channel 3 Base Address .....RO
Port 7 –Channel 3 Byte Count.....RO

Port 8 –1st Read Channel 0-3 Command Register .....RO
Port 8 –2nd Read Channel 0-3 Request Register.....RO
Port 8 –3rd Read Channel 0 Mode Register .....RO
Port 8 –4th Read Channel 1 Mode Register .....RO
Port 8 –5th Read Channel 2 Mode Register .....RO
Port 8 –6th Read Channel 3 Mode Register .....RO

Port F –Channel 0-3 Read All Mask .....RO

Port C4 –Channel 5 Base Address.....RO
Port C6 –Channel 5 Byte Count .....RO
Port C8 –Channel 6 Base Address.....RO
Port CA –Channel 6 Byte Count .....RO
Port CC –Channel 7 Base Address.....RO
Port CE –Channel 7 Byte Count .....RO

Port D0 –1st Read Channel 4-7 Command Register.....RO
Port D0 –2nd Read Channel 4-7 Request Register.....RO
Port D0 –3rd Read Channel 4 Mode Register .....RO
Port D0 –4th Read Channel 5 Mode Register.....RO
Port D0 –5th Read Channel 6 Mode Register.....RO
Port D0 –6th Read Channel 7 Mode Register.....RO

Port DE –Channel 4-7 Read All Mask .....RO

Interrupt Controller I/O Registers

Ports 20-21 - Master Interrupt Controller

The Master Interrupt Controller controls system interrupt channels 0-7. Two registers control the Master Interrupt Controller. They are:

I/O Address Bits 15-0	Register Name	
0000 0000 001x xxx0	**Master Interrupt Control**	**RW**
0000 0000 001x xxx1	**Master Interrupt Mask**	**RW**

Note that not all bits of the address are decoded.

The Master Interrupt Controller is compatible with the Intel 8259 Interrupt Controller chip. Detailed descriptions of 8259 Interrupt Controller operation can be obtained from the Intel Peripheral Components Data Book and numerous other industry publications.

Ports A0-A1 - Slave Interrupt Controller

The Slave Interrupt Controller controls system interrupt channels 8-15. The slave system interrupt controller also occupies two register locations:

I/O Address Bits 15-0	Register Name	
0000 0000 101x xxx0	**Slave Interrupt Control**	**RW**
0000 0000 101x xxx1	**Slave Interrupt Mask**	**RW**

Note that not all address bits are decoded.

The Slave Interrupt Controller is compatible with the Intel 8259 Interrupt Controller chip. Detailed descriptions of 8259 Interrupt Controller operation can be obtained from the Intel Peripheral Components Data Book and numerous other industry publications.

Interrupt Controller Shadow Registers

The following shadow registers are enabled by setting function 0 Rx47[4]. If the shadow registers are enabled, they are read back at the indicated I/O port instead of the standard interrupt controller registers (writes are unchanged).

Port 20 - Master Interrupt Control Shadow ..... RO
Port A0 - Slave Interrupt Control Shadow..... RO

- **7 Reserved** .....always reads 0
- **6 OCW3 bit 2 (POLL)**
- **5 OCW3 bit 0 (RIS)**
- **4 OCW3 bit 5 (SMM)**
- **3 OCW2 bit 7 (R)**
- **2 ICW4 bit 4 (SFNM)**
- **1 ICW4 bit 1 (AEOI)**
- **0 ICW1 bit 3 (LTIM)**

Port 21 - Master Interrupt Mask Shadow ..... RO
Port A1 - Slave Interrupt Mask Shadow ..... RO

- **7-5 Reserved** .....always reads 0
- **4-0 T7-T3 of Interrupt Vector Address**

Timer / Counter Registers

Ports 40-43 - Timer / Counter I/O Registers

There are 4 Timer / Counter registers:

I/O Address Bits 15-0	Register Name	
0000 0000 010x xx00	**Timer / Counter 0 Count**	**RW**
0000 0000 010x xx01	**Timer / Counter 1 Count**	**RW**
0000 0000 010x xx10	**Timer / Counter 2 Count**	**RW**
0000 0000 010x xx11	**Timer / Counter Cmd Mode**	**WO**

Note that not all bits of the address are decoded.

The Timer / Counters are compatible with the Intel 8254 Timer / Counter chip. Detailed descriptions of 8254 Timer / Counter operation can be obtained from the Intel Peripheral Components Data Book and numerous other industry publications.

Timer / Counter Shadow Registers

The following shadow registers are enabled for readback by setting function 0 Rx47[4]. If the shadow registers are enabled, they are read back at the indicated I/O port instead of the standard timer / counter registers (writes are unchanged).

Port 40 – Counter 0 Base Count Value (LSB 1st MSB 2nd)RO
Port 41 – Counter 1 Base Count Value (LSB 1st MSB 2nd)RO
Port 42 – Counter 2 Base Count Value (LSB 1st MSB 2nd)RO

CMOS / RTC I/O Registers

Port 70 - CMOS Address ..... RW

7 NMI Disable ..... RW
- 0 Enable NMI Generation. NMI is asserted on encountering SERR# on the PCI bus.
- 1 Disable NMI Generation ..... default

6-0 CMOS Address (lower 128 bytes) ..... RW

Port 71 - CMOS Data ..... RW

7-0 CMOS Data (128 bytes)

Note: Ports 70-71 may be accessed if Rx5A bit-2 is set to one to select the internal RTC. If Rx5A bit-2 is set to zero, accesses to ports 70-71 will be directed to an external RTC.

Port 74 - CMOS Address ..... RW

7-0 CMOS Address (256 bytes) ..... RW

Port 75 - CMOS Data ..... RW

7-0 CMOS Data (256 bytes)

Note: Ports 74-75 may be accessed only if Function 0 Rx5B bit-1 is set to one to enable the internal RTC SRAM and if Rx48 bit-3 (Port 74/75 Access Enable) is set to one to enable port 74/75 access.

Note: Ports 70-71 are compatible with PC industry-standards and may be used to access the lower 128 bytes of the 256-byte on-chip CMOS RAM. Ports 74-75 may be used to access the full on-chip extended 256-byte space in cases where the on-chip RTC is disabled.

Note: The system Real Time Clock (RTC) is part of the "CMOS" block. The RTC control registers are located at specific offsets in the CMOS data area (0-0Dh and 7D-7Fh). Detailed descriptions of CMOS / RTC operation and programming can be obtained from the VIA VT82887 Data Book or numerous other industry publications. For reference, the definition of the RTC register locations and bits are summarized in the following table:

Offset	Description		Binary Range	BCD Range
00	**Seconds**		00-3Bh	00-59h
01	**Seconds Alarm**		00-3Bh	00-59h
02	**Minutes**		00-3Bh	00-59h
03	**Minutes Alarm**		00-3Bh	00-59h
04	**Hours**	am 12hr:	01-1Ch	01-12h
		pm 12hr:	81-8Ch	81-92h
		24hr:	00-17h	00-23h
05	**Hours Alarm**	am 12hr:	01-1Ch	01-12h
		pm 12hr:	81-8Ch	81-92h
		24hr:	00-17h	00-23h
06	**Day of the Week**	Sun=1:	01-07h	01-07h
07	**Day of the Month**		01-1Fh	01-31h
08	**Month**		01-0Ch	01-12h
09	**Year**		00-63h	00-99h

0A Register A

7	**UIP**	Update In Progress
6-4	**DV2-0**	Divide (010=ena osc & keep time)
3-0	**RS3-0**	Rate Select for Periodic Interrupt

0B Register B

7	**SET**	Inhibit Update Transfers
6	**PIE**	Periodic Interrupt Enable
5	**AIE**	Alarm Interrupt Enable
4	**UIE**	Update Ended Interrupt Enable
3	**SQWE**	No function (read/write bit)
2	**DM**	Data Mode (0=BCD, 1=binary)
1	**24/12**	Hours Byte Format (0=12, 1=24)
0	**DSE**	Daylight Savings Enable

0C Register C

7	**IRQF**	Interrupt Request Flag
6	**PF**	Periodic Interrupt Flag
5	**AF**	Alarm Interrupt Flag
4	**UF**	Update Ended Flag
3-0	**0**	Unused (always read 0)

0D Register D

7	**VRT**	Reads 1 if VBAT voltage is OK
6-0	**0**	Unused (always read 0)

0E-7C Software-Defined Storage Registers (111 Bytes)

Offset	Extended Functions	Binary Range	BCD Range
7D	**Date Alarm**	01-1Fh	01-31h
7E	**Month Alarm**	01-0Ch	01-12h
7F	**Century Field**	13-14h	19-20h

80-FF Software-Defined Storage Registers (128 Bytes)

Table 9. CMOS Register Summary

Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup Index / Data Registers

The Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup registers are accessed by performing I/O operations to / from an index / data pair of registers in system I/O space at port addresses 2Eh and 2Fh. The registers accessed using this mechanism are used to initialize Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup at index values in the range of E0-EF.

Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup initialization is accomplished in three steps:

1) Enter initialization mode (set Function 0 Rx51[1] = 1)
2) Initialize the chip
   a) Write index to port 2Eh
   b) Read / write data from / to port 2Fh
   c) Repeat a and b for all desired registers
3) Exit initialization mode (set Function 0 Rx51[1] = 0)

Port 2Eh – Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup Index.....RW

7-0 Index Value

Function 0 PCI configuration space register Rx51[1] must be set to 1 to enable access to the configuration registers.

Port 2Fh – Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup Data.....RW

7-0 Data Value

Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup Registers

These registers are accessed via the port 2E / 2F index / data register pair with Function 0 Rx51[1] = 1 using the indicated index values below:

Index E0 – Keyboard / Mouse Wakeup Enable.....RW

Version CD (Default = 80h):

7 Win98 Keyboard Power Key Wake-up
- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable**.....default**

6-3 Reserved ..... always reads 0

2 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

Version CE (Default = 08h):

7-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

3 Win98 Keyboard Power Key Wake-up
- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable**.....default**

2 Password Wake-up
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

Version CD and CE:

1 PS/2 Mouse Wake-up
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

0 Keyboard Wake-up
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

Index E1 – Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 0 (F0h).. RW

7-0 Keyboard Wakeup First Scan Code .....def = F0h

Index E2 – Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 1 (00h).. RW

7-0 Keyboard Wakeup Second Scan Code .....def = 00h

Index E3 – Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 2 (00h).. RW

7-0 Keyboard Wakeup Third Scan Code.....def = 00h

Index E4 – Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 3 (00h).. RW

7-0 Keyboard Wakeup Fourth Scan Code.....def = 00h

Index E5 – Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 4 (00h).. RW

7-0 Keyboard Wakeup Fifth Scan Code .....def = 00h

Version CD:

Index E6 –Mouse Button Status Wakeup Scan Code.... RW

7-0 Mouse Button Status Wakeup Scan Code def = 09h

Version CE:

Index E6 – Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 5 (00h).. RW

7-0 Keyboard Wakeup Sixth Scan Code.....def = 00h

Index E7 – Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 6 (00h).. RW

7-0 Keyboard Wakeup Seventh Scan Code ....def = 00h

Index E8 – Keyboard Wakeup Scan Code Set 7 (00h).. RW

7-0 Keyboard Wakeup Eighth Scan Code .....def = 00h

Index E9 –Mouse Wakeup Scan Code Set 1 (09h)..... RW

7-0 Mouse Wakeup Scan Code Set 1.....def = 09h

Index EA –Mouse Wakeup Scan Code Set 2 (00h)..... RW

7-0 Mouse Wakeup Scan Code Set 2.....def = 00h

Index EB –Mouse Wakeup Scan Code Mask (00h)..... RW

7-0 Mouse Wakeup Scan Code Mask.....def = 00h

Memory Mapped I/O APIC Registers

Memory Address FEC00000 – APIC Index .....RW

7-0 APIC Index ..... default = 00h
8-bit pointer to APIC registers.

Memory Address FEC00013-10 – APIC Data .....RW

31-0 APIC Data ..... default = 0000 0000h
Data for the APIC register pointed to by the APIC index

Memory Address FEC00020 – APIC IRQ Pin AssertionWO

7-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0
4-0 APIC IRQ Number .....default undefined
IRQ # for this interrupt. Valid values are 0-23 only.

Memory Address FEC00040 – APIC EOI ..... WO

7-0 Redirection Entry Clear .....default undefined
When a write is issued to this register, the APIC will check this field and compare it with the vector field for each entry in the I/O redirection table. When a match is found, the "Remote_IRR" bit for that I/O Redirection Entry will be cleared.

Indexed I/O APIC Registers

Offset 0 – APIC Identification (0000 0000h) ..... RW

31-28 Reserved .....always reads 0
27-24 APIC Identification .....default = 0
Software must program this value before using the APIC.
23-0 Reserved .....always reads 0

Offset 1 – APIC Version (CD=0017 0011, CE=00178002)RO

31-24 Reserved .....always reads 00h
23-16 Maximum Redirection .....always reads 17h
Equal to the number of APIC interrupt pins minus one. For this APIC, this value is 17h (23 decimal).
15 CE: PCI IRQ
Always reads 1 to indicate that the IRQ assertion register is implemented and that PCI devices are allowed to write to it to cause interrupts.
15 CD: Reserved .....always reads 0
14-8 Reserved .....always reads 0
7-0 APIC Version .....always reads 11h (CD) or 02h (CE)
CD: The implementation version for this APIC is 11h.
CE: The implementation version for this APIC is 02h.

Offset 2 – APIC Arbitration (0000 0000h)..... RO

31-28 Reserved .....always reads 00h
27-24 APIC Arbitration ID .....always reads 00h
23-0 Reserved .....always reads 00h

Offset 3 – Boot Configuration (CE Only) (0000 0000h). RW

31-1 Reserved .....always reads 00h
0 Interrupt Delivery Mechanism
0 APIC Serial Bus..... default
1 Front Side Bus Message

Offset 3F-10 – I/O Redirection Table

This table contains 24 registers, with one dedicated table entry for each of the 24 APIC interrupt signals. Each 64-bit register consists of two 32-bit values at consecutive index locations, with the low 32 bits at the even index and the upper 32 bits at the odd index. The default value for all registers is xxx1 xxxx xxxx xxxxh.

Format for Each I/O Redirection Table Entry:

Physical Mode (bit-11=0)

63-60 Reserved ..... always reads 0
59-56 APIC ID ..... default = undefined

Logical Mode (bit-11=1)

63-56 Destination ..... default = undefined

55-17 Reserved ..... always reads 0

16 Interrupt Masked
- 0 Not masked ..... default
- 1 Masked

15 Trigger Mode
- 0 Edge Sensitive ..... default
- 1 Level Sensitive

14 Remote IRR (Level Sensitive Interrupts Only). RO
- 0 EOI message with a matching interrupt vector received from a local APIC
- 1 Level sensitive interrupt sent by IOAPIC accepted by local APIC(s)

13 Interrupt Input Pin Polarity
- 0 Active High..... default
- 1 Active Low

12 Delivery Status..... RO

Contains the current status of the delivery of this interrupt.
- 0 Idle (no activity)
- 1 Send Pending (the interrupt has been injected but its delivery is temporarily delayed either because the APIC bus is busy or because the receiving APIC unit cannot currently accept the interrupt)

11 Destination Mode

Determines the interpretation of bits 56-63.
- 0 Physical Mode ..... default
- 1 Logical Mode

10-8 Delivery Mode

Specifies how the APICs listed in the destination field should act upon reception of this signal
- 000 Fixed ..... default
- 001 Lowest Priority
- 010 SMI
- 011 -reserved-
- 100 NMI
- 101 INIT
- 110 -reserved-
- 111 External INT

7-0 Interrupt Vector

Contains the interrupt vector for this interrupt. Vector values range from 10h to FEh.

Configuration Space I/O

Configuration space accesses for all functions use PCI configuration mechanism 1 (see PCI specification revision 2.2 for more details). The ports respond only to double-word accesses. Byte or word accesses will be passed on unchanged.

There are 8 “functions” implemented in the VT8233 (see Table 5 on page 21). The following sections describe the registers and register bits of these functions.

Port CFB-CF8 - Configuration Address .....RW

31 Configuration Space Enable
- 0 Disabled..... default
- 1 Convert configuration data port writes to configuration cycles on the PCI bus

30-24 Reserved ..... always reads 0

23-16 PCI Bus Number
Used to choose a specific PCI bus in the system

15-11 Device Number
Used to choose a specific device in the system

10-8 Function Number
Used to choose a specific function if the selected device supports multiple functions

7-2 Register Number
Used to select a specific doubleword in the device’s configuration space

1-0 Fixed ..... always reads 0

Port CFF-CFC - Configuration Data .....RW

Device 17 Function 0 Registers – Bus Control and Power Management

All registers are located in the device 17 function 0 configuration space of the VT8233. These registers are accessed through PCI configuration mechanism #1 via I/O address 0CF8h / 0CFCh.

PCI Configuration Space Header

Offset 1-0 - Vendor ID (1106h)..... RO

Offset 3-2 - Device ID (3074h) ..... RO

Offset 5-4 - Command.....RW

15-8	**Reserved**	..... always reads 0
7	**Address / Data Stepping**	
	0 Disable	
	1 Enable	..... default
6-4	**Reserved**	..... always reads 0
3	**Special Cycle Enable**	.....Normally RW, default = 0
2	**Bus Master**	..... always reads 1
1	**Memory Space**	..... Normally RO, reads as 1
0	**I/O Space**	..... Normally RO, reads as 1

Offset 7-6 - Status..... RWC

15	**Detected Parity Error**	..... write one to clear
14	**Signalled System Error**	.....always reads 0
13	**Signalled Master Abort**	..... write one to clear
12	**Received Target Abort**	..... write one to clear
11	**Signalled Target Abort**	..... write one to clear
10-9	**DEVSEL# Timing**	.....fixed at 01 (medium)
8	**Data Parity Detected**	.....always reads 0
7	**Fast Back-to-Back**	.....always reads 0
6-0	**Reserved**	.....always reads 0

Offset 8 - Revision ID (nnh) ..... RO

7-0	**Revision ID**	.....always reads nnh

Offset 9 - Program Interface (00h)..... RO

Offset A - Sub Class Code (01h) ..... RO

Offset B - Class Code (06h) ..... RO

Offset E - Header Type (80h)..... RO

7-0	**Header Type Code.....**	80h (Multifunction Device)

Offset F - BIST (00h) ..... RO

Offset 2F-2C - Subsystem ID ..... RO

Use offset 70-73 to change the value returned.

ISA Bus Control

Offset 40 - ISA Bus Control (00h).....RW

7 CE: Reserved..... always reads 0

7 CD: ISA Command Delay
- 0 Normal ..... default
- 1 Extra

6 I/O Recovery Time
The number of clocks between 2 I/O commands
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable (Rx4C[7:6] determines the # of clocks)

5 ROM Wait States
- 0 1 Wait State..... default
- 1 0 Wait States

4 ROM Write
- 0 Disable (ROM writes are ignored) ..... default
- 1 Enable (ROM can be written)

3 Double DMA Clock
- 0 DMA clock runs at 4 MHz..... default
- 1 DMA clock runs at 8 MHz

2 4D0 / 4D1 Port Configuration
Controls whether ports 4D0 / 4D1 can be configured. Ports 4D0 / 4D1 determine whether IRQ requests are edge or level triggerred (4D0[7-0] for IRQ7-0, 4D1[7-0] for IRQ15-8) (0 = level, 1 = edge).
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

1 DMA / Interrupt / Timer Shadow Register Read
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable (shadow register values can be read)

0 Double ISA Bus Clock
- 0 Bus clock runs at PCLK / 4 (8 MHz) .... default
- 1 Bus clock runs at PCLK / 2 (16 MHz)

Offset 41 – BIOS ROM Decode Control (00h).....RW

Setting these bits to 1 enables the indicated address range to be included in the ROMCS# decode:

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0
6 FFF00000h-FFF7FFFFh ..... default=0 (disable)
5 FFE80000h-FFEFFFFFh..... default=0 (disable)
4 FFE00000h-FFE7FFFFh..... default=0 (disable)
3 FFD80000h-FFDFFFFFh ..... default=0 (disable)
2 FFD00000h-FFD7FFFFh ..... default=0 (disable)
1 FFC80000h-FFCFFFFFh ..... default=0 (disable)
0 FFC00000h-FFC7FFFFh..... default=0 (disable)

Note: ROMCS# is always active when ISA addresses FFF80000-FFFFFFFF and 000E0000-000FFFFF are decoded.

Offset 42 – Line Buffer Control (00h)..... RW

7 ISA Master DMA Line Buffer
Controls whether the DMA line buffer is used.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable. Master DMA waits until the line buffer is full (8 DWords) before transmitting data (bit-6 must also be enabled to insure that there are no coherency issues).

6 Gate Interrupt Until Line Buffer Flush Complete
This bit should be enabled if bit-7 is enabled.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable. IRQs are gated until the line buffer is flushed to insure that there are no coherency issues.

5 Flush Line Buffer for Interrupt
This bit controls whether the line bufer is flushed when an interrupt request is generated. This bit should be enabled if bit-7 is enabled.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

4 Uninterruptable Burst Read
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable. The PCI bus is not granted to DMA until burst read transactions from the north bridge are completed.

3-0 Reserved .....always reads 0

Offset 43 – Delay Transaction Control (00h)..... RW

7-4 Reserved (Do Not Program) .....default = 0

3 Delayed Transactions (PCI Spec Rev 2.1)
This bit controls whether delayed transactions (delayed read / write and posted write) are enabled.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

2 Only Posted Write
This bit controls whether posted write is enabled, as opposed to bit-3 which controls whether delayed read / write as well as posted write are enabled.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

1 Write Delay Transaction Timeout Timer
When enabled, if a delayed transaction (write cycle only) is not retried after 2^{12} PCI clocks, the transaction is terminated.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

0 Read Delay Transaction Timeout Timer
When enabled, if a delayed transaction (read cycle only) is not retried after 2^{12} PCI clocks, the transaction is terminated.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

Offset 48 – Read Pass Write Control.....RW

7 CD: Reserved..... always reads 0

7 CE: APIC FSB Address Bit-2 Mask

0 Disable (A2 not masked)..... default

1 Enable (force A2 from APIC FSB to low)

Address bit A2 controls whether data is in the lower (0) or upper (1) doubleword of a quadword sent to the CPU. When this bit is enabled, A2 is masked which means it is always 0 to select the lower doubleword.

6-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3 AC97 / LPC Read Pass Write

0 Disable (a read cannot be performed before a preceeding write has been completed) .. default

1 Enable (internal AC97 and LPC devices are allowed to perform a read before a preceeding write)

2 IDE Read Pass Write

0 Disable (a read cannot be performed before a preceeding write has been completed) .. default

1 Enable (the internal IDE controller is allowed to perform a read before a preceeding write)

1 USB Read Pass Write

0 Disable (a read cannot be performed before a preceeding write has been completed) .. default

1 Enable (the internal USB controllers are allowed to perform a read before a preceeding write)

0 NIC Read Pass Write

0 Disable (a read cannot be performed before a preceeding write has been completed) .. default

1 Enable (the internal LAN controller is allowed to perform a read before a preceeding write)

Offset 49 – CCA Control..... RW

7 Reserved .....always reads 0

6 South Bridge Internal Master Devices Priority Higher Than External PCI Master

0 Disable..... default

1 Enable

The "CCA" is an internal arbiter that controls the priority of external PCI masters vs. internal master devices. Normally priority is the same for internal and external PCI master devices, but when this bit is enabled, internal master devices are given higher priority than external PCI masters (3/4 : 1/4).

5 CCA Clean to Mask Off IRQ

Controls whether interrupt requests are gated until data is written to memory.

0 Disable..... default

1 Enable

4-3 Reserved (Do Not Program) .....default = 0

2 WSC Mask Off INTR

Controls whether INTR is masked until write snoop is complete.

0 Disable..... default

1 Enable

1-0 Reserved (Do Not Program) .....default = 0

Miscellaneous Control

Offset 4C - IDE Interrupt Routing (04h) .....RW

7-6 I/O Recovery Time Select
When Rx40[6] is enabled, this field determines the I/O recovery time.
- 00 1 Bus Clock ..... default
- 01 2 Bus Clock
- 10 4 Bus Clock
- 11 8 Bus Clock

5-4 Reserved (do not program) ..... default = 0

3-2 IDE Secondary Channel IRQ Routing ..... RO
.....always reads 01b (IRQ15)

1-0 IDE Primary Channel IRQ Routing ..... RO
.....always reads 00b (IRQ14)

Offset 4D – External APIC IRQ Output Control.....RW

7 CD: Reserved..... always reads 0

7 CE: IDE IRQ to APIC[23:16] with Device 17 Function 1 Rx3C[2:0]
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

6 USB Port 4-5 IRQ to APIC[23:16] with Device 17 Function 4 Rx3C[2:0]
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

5 LAN / NIC IRQ to APIC[23:16] with Device 18 Function 0 Rx3C[2:0]
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3 MC97 IRQ to APIC[23:16] with Device 17 Function 6 Rx3C[2:0]
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

2 AC97 IRQ to APIC[23:16] with Device 17 Function 5 Rx3C[2:0]
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

1 USB Port 2-3 IRQ to APIC[23:16] with Device 17 Function 3 Rx3C[2:0]
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

0 USB Port 0-1 IRQ to APIC[23:16] with Device 17 Function 2 Rx3C[2:0]
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

The above bits control whether the indicated IRQ can be routed to APIC[23:16], where Rx3C[2:0] ("Interrupt Line") of the associated function determines the IRQ number (0 = IRQ16, 1 = IRQ17, 2 = IRQ18, etc.)

Offset 4E - Internal RTC Test Mode..... RW

7-5 Reserved .....always reads 0

4 CD: Reserved.....always reads 0

4 CE: Last Port 70/74 Written Status
- 0 Last write was to port 70 ..... default
- 1 Last write was to port 74

3 Extra RTC Port 74/75
The RTC is normally accessed though ports 70/74. This bit controls whether two extra ports (74 / 75) can be used to access the RTC.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

2-0 Reserved (Do Not Program) .....default = 0

Offset 4F – PCI Bus and CPU Interface Control..... RW

7-4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3 CPU Reset Source
This bit determines whether CPU Reset (generated through port 92 or the keyboard) uses INIT or CPURST.
- 0 Use CPURST as CPU Reset..... default
- 1 Use INIT as CPU Reset

2 Reserved (Do Not Program) .....default = 0

1 CE: Reserved .....always reads 0

1 CD: IRDY# Wait States
- 0 0 Wait States..... default
- 1 1 Wait State

0 Software PCI Reset .....write 1 to generate PCI reset

Function Control

Offset 50 – Function Control 1 (09h) ..... RW

7 Function 6 MC97
- 0 Enable ..... default
- 1 Disable

6 Function 5 AC97
- 0 Enable ..... default
- 1 Disable

5 Function 3 USB Ports 2-3
- 0 Enable ..... default
- 1 Disable

4 Function 2 USB Ports 0-1
- 0 Enable ..... default
- 1 Disable

3 Function 1 IDE
- 0 Enable
- 1 Disable **.....default**

2 Function 4 USB Ports 4-5
- 0 Enable ..... default
- 1 Disable

1-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 51 – Function Control 2 (0Dh) ..... RW

7-6 Reserved ..... always reads 0

5 Internal LAN Controller Clock Gating

When bit-4 of this register is disabled, the LAN function is disabled but the LAN controller clock is not gated automatically. This bit controls whether the clock is actually gated.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

4 Internal LAN Controller
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

3 Internal RTC
- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable**.....default**

2 Internal PS2 Mouse
- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable**.....default**

1 Internal KBC Configuration
- 0 Disable ports 2E / 2F offsets E0-EF ..... default
- 1 Enable ports 2E / 2F offsets E0-EF

0 Internal KBC
- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable**.....default**

Pin	0 / Disable (External KBC)	1 / Enable (Internal KBC)
W10	KBCS#	ROMCS#
N2	KBRC	KBDT
N1	KA20G	KBCK
M2	IRQ12	MSDT
N3	IRQ1	MSCK

Serial IRQ, LPC, and PC/PCI DMA Control

Offset 52 – Serial IRQ & LPC Control (00h) ..... RW

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6 LPC Short Wait Abort
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable. During a short wait, the cycle is aborted after 8Ts.

5 LPC Frame Wait State Time
- 0 Frame Wait State is 1T ..... default
- 1 Frame Wait State is 2T

4 LPC Stop to Start Frame Wait State
- 0 Enable. One idle state is inserted between Stop and Start..... default
- 1 Disable. Stop is followed immediately by Start.

3 Serial IRQ
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable (IRQ Asserted via Serial IRQ Pin W8)

2 Serial IRQ Quiet Mode
- 0 Continuous Mode ..... default
- 1 Quiet Mode

1-0 Serial IRQ Start-Frame Width
- 00 4 PCI Clocks ..... default
- 01 6 PCI Clocks
- 10 8 PCI Clocks
- 11 10 PCI Clocks

Offset 53 – PC/PCI DMA Control (CD Only) ..... RW

7 PCI DMA Pair A and Pair B
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

6 PCI DMA Channel 7
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

5 PCI DMA Channel 6
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

4 PCI DMA Channel 5
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

3 PCI DMA Channel 3
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

2 PCI DMA Channel 2
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

1 PCI DMA Channel 1
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

0 PCI DMA Channel 0
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

Plug and Play Control - PCI

Offset 54 - PCI Interrupt Polarity .....RW

7-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

The following bits all default to "level" triggered (0)

3 PCI INTA# Invert (edge) / Non-invert (level)..(1/0)
2 PCI INTB# Invert (edge) / Non-invert (level)..(1/0)
1 PCI INTC# Invert (edge) / Non-invert (level)..(1/0)
0 PCI INTD# Invert (edge) / Non-invert (level)..(1/0)

Note: PCI INTA-D# normally connect to PCI interrupt pins INTA-D# (see pin definitions for more information).

Offset 55 – PCI PNP Interrupt Routing 1 .....RW

7-4 PCI INTA# Routing (see PnP IRQ routing table)
3-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 56 – PCI PNP Interrupt Routing 2 .....RW

7-4 PCI INTC# Routing (see PnP IRQ routing table)
3-0 PCI INTB# Routing (see PnP IRQ routing table)

Offset 57 – PCI PNP Interrupt Routing 3 .....RW

7-4 PCI INTD# Routing (see PnP IRQ routing table)
3-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Table 10. PnP IRQ Routing Table

0000 Disabled ..... default
0001 IRQ1
0010 Reserved
0011 IRQ3
0100 IRQ4
0101 IRQ5
0110 IRQ6
0111 IRQ7
1000 Reserved
1001 IRQ9
1010 IRQ10
1011 IRQ11
1100 IRQ12
1101 Reserved
1110 IRQ14
1111 IRQ15

GPIO and Miscellaneous Control

Offset 58 – Miscellaneous Control 0 (40h).....RW

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6 Internal APIC
- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable**.....default**

5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Address Decode
- 0 Subtractive..... default
- 1 Positive

3 RTC High Bank Access
- 0 Disable access to upper 128 bytes..... default
- 1 Enable access to upper 128 bytes

2 RTC Rx32 Write Protect
- 0 Disable (not protected)..... default
- 1 Enable (write protected)

1 RTC Rx0D Write Protect
- 0 Disable (not protected)..... default
- 1 Enable (write protected)

0 RTC Rx32 Map to Century Byte

Controls whether RTC Rx32 is mapped to the century byte.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

Offset 59 – Miscellaneous Control 1 (00h).....RW

7-6 Reserved ..... always reads 0

5 APIC Specification 1.4 Compatible
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

4 LPC Keyboard
- 0 Disable (ISA Keyboard)..... default
- 1 Enable (LPC Keyboard)

3 External MCCS to LPC

Controls whether external MCCS is through LPC or ISA when internal MCCS is not used.
- 0 Disable (ISA MCCS) ..... default
- 1 Enable (LPC MCCS)

2 Internal MCCS (Microcontroller Chip Select)
- 0 Disable (external MCCS)..... default
- 1 Enable (internal MCCS)

1 A20M# Active
- 0 Disable (A20M# signal not asserted).... default
- 1 Enable (A20M# signal asserted)

0 CE: NMI on PCI Parity Error
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable (to generate NMI, Port 61[3] and Port 70[7] must also be set)

Offset 5A – DMA Bandwidth Control (CE Only) (00h) RW

7 DMA Channel 7 Bandwidth
- 0 Normal..... default
- 1 Improved

6 DMA Channel 6 Bandwidth
- 0 Normal..... default
- 1 Improved

5 DMA Channel 5 Bandwidth
- 0 Normal..... default
- 1 Improved

4 DMA Single Transfer Mode Bandwidth
- 0 Normal..... default
- 1 Improved

3 DMA Channel 3 Bandwidth
- 0 Normal..... default
- 1 Improved

2 DMA Channel 2 Bandwidth
- 0 Normal..... default
- 1 Improved

1 DMA Channel 1 Bandwidth
- 0 Normal..... default
- 1 Improved

0 DMA Channel 0 Bandwidth
- 0 Normal..... default
- 1 Improved

The above bits determine if DMA bandwidth is improved for the specified channel. If enabled, bandwidth improvement is accomplished by reducing the transaction latency between the DMA Controller and the LPC Bus Controller.

Programmable Chip Select Control

Offset 5D-5C – PCS 0 I/O Port Address (0000h).....RW

15-0 PCS 0 I/O Port Address..... default = 0

Offset 5F-5E – PCS 1 I/O Port Address (0000h).....RW

15-0 PCS 1 I/O Port Address..... default = 0

Offset 61-60 – PCS 2 I/O Port Address (0000h).....RW

15-0 PCS 2 I/O Port Address..... default = 0

Offset 63-62 – PCS 3 I/O Port Address (0000h).....RW

15-0 PCS 3 I/O Port Address..... default = 0

Offset 65-64 – PCS I/O Port Address Mask (0000h) .....RW

15-12 PCS 3 I/O Port Address Mask 3-0
- 0000 Decode range is 1 byte ..... default
- 0001 Decode range is 2 bytes
- 0011 Decode range is 4 bytes
- 0111 Decode range is 8 bytes
- 1111 Decode range is 16 bytes

11-8 PCS 2 I/O Port Address Mask 3-0
- 0000 Decode range is 1 byte ..... default
- 0001 Decode range is 2 bytes
- 0011 Decode range is 4 bytes
- 0111 Decode range is 8 bytes
- 1111 Decode range is 16 bytes

7-4 PCS 1 I/O Port Address Mask 3-0
- 0000 Decode range is 1 byte ..... default
- 0001 Decode range is 2 bytes
- 0011 Decode range is 4 bytes
- 0111 Decode range is 8 bytes
- 1111 Decode range is 16 bytes

3-0 PCS 0 I/O Port Address Mask 3-0
- 0000 Decode range is 1 byte ..... default
- 0001 Decode range is 2 bytes
- 0011 Decode range is 4 bytes
- 0111 Decode range is 8 bytes
- 1111 Decode range is 16 bytes

Offset 66 – PCS Control (00h) ..... RW

7 PCS 3 Internal I/O
- 0 Disable (External)..... default
- 1 Enable (Internal)

6 PCS 2 Internal I/O
- 0 Disable (External)..... default
- 1 Enable (Internal)

5 PCS 1 Internal I/O
- 0 Disable (External)..... default
- 1 Enable (Internal)

4 PCS 0 Internal I/O
- 0 Disable (External)..... default
- 1 Enable (Internal)

The above 4 bits determine whether Programmable Chip Selects 0-3 are treated as internal I/O

3 PCS 3
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

2 PCS 2
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

1 PCS 1
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

0 PCS 0
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

Offset 67 – Output Control (04h) ..... RW

7-3 Reserved .....always reads 0

2 FERR Voltage
- 0 2.5V
- 1 1.5V **..... default**

1-0 Reserved .....always reads 0

ISA Decoding Control

Offset 6C – ISA Positive Decoding Control 1.....RW

7 On-Board I/O (Ports 00-FFh) Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

6 Microsoft-Sound System I/O Port Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable (bits 5-4 determine the decode range)

5-4 Microsoft-Sound System I/O Decode Range
- 00 0530h-0537h ..... default
- 01 0604h-060Bh
- 10 0E80-0E87h
- 11 0F40h-0F47h

3 Internal APIC Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

2 BIOS ROM Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

1 Internal PCS1# Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

0 Internal PCS0# Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

Offset 6D – ISA Positive Decoding Control 2.....RW

7 FDC Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

6 LPT Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

5-4 LPT Decode Range
- 00 3BCh-3BFh, 7BCh-7BEh..... default
- 01 378h-37Fh, 778h-77Ah
- 10 278h-27Fh, 678h-67Ah
- 11 -reserved-

3 Game Port Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

2 MIDI Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

1-0 MIDI Decode Range
- 00 300-303h ..... default
- 01 310-313h
- 10 320-323h
- 11 330-333h

Offset 6E – ISA Positive Decoding Control 3 ..... RW

7 COM Port B Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

6-4 COM-Port B Decode Range
- 000 3F8h-3FFh (COM1)..... default
- 001 2F8h-2FFh (COM2)
- 010 220h-227h
- 011 228h-22Fh
- 100 238h-23Fh
- 101 2E8h-2EFh (COM4)
- 110 338h-33Fh
- 111 3E8h-3EFh (COM3)

3 COM Port A Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

2-0 COM-Port A Decode Range
- 000 3F8h-3FFh (COM1)..... default
- 001 2F8h-2FFh (COM2)
- 010 220h-227h
- 011 228h-22Fh
- 100 238h-23Fh
- 101 2E8h-2EFh (COM4)
- 110 338h-33Fh
- 111 3E8h-3EFh (COM3)

Offset 6F – ISA Positive Decoding Control 4 ..... RW

7-4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3 FDC Decoding Range
- 0 Primary ..... default
- 1 Secondary

2 Sound Blaster Positive Decoding
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

1-0 Sound Blaster Decode Range
- 00 220-233h..... default
- 01 240-253h
- 10 260-273h
- 11 280-293h

I/O Pad Control

Offset 7C – I/O Pad Control (00h)..... RW

7-6 Reserved .....always reads 0

5-4 IDE Interface Output Drive Strength
- 00 Lowest ..... default
- … …
- 11 Highest

3-2 PLL PCLK Input Delay Select

1-0 PLL CLK66 Feedback Delay Select

Power Management-Specific Configuration Registers

Offset 80 – General Configuration 0.....RW

7 CE: Reserved..... always reads 0

7 CD: Thermal Alarm Source Select
- 0 From GPI5 / PME# pin ..... default
- 1 From internal temperature sensing circuits

6 Sleep Button
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Sleep Button is on GPI21 / ACSDIN3 pin

5 Debounce LID and PWRBTN# Inputs for 200us
This bit controls whether the debounce circuit for the LID# and PWRBTN# inputs is enabled to reduce possible noise.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

4 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

3 Microsoft Sound Monitor in Audio Access
This bit controls whether an I/O access to the sound port sets I/O Rx33-30[10] (Audio Access Status) = 1.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

2 Game Port Monitor in Audio Access
This bit controls whether an I/O access to the game port sets I/O Rx33-30[10] (Audio Access Status) = 1.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

1 Sound Blaster Monitor in Audio Access
This bit controls whether an I/O access to the sound blaster port sets I/O Rx33-30[10] (Audio Access Status) = 1.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

0 MIDI Monitor in Audio Access
This bit controls whether an I/O access to the MIDI port sets I/O Rx33-30[10] (Audio Access Status) = 1.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

Offset 81 - General Configuration 1..... RW

7 I/O Enable for ACPI I/O Base
- 0 Disable access to ACPI I/O block..... default
- 1 Allow access to Power Management I/O Register Block (see offset 4B-48 to set the base address for this register block). The definitions of the registers in the Power Management I/O Register Block are included later in this document, following the Power Management Subsystem overview.

6-4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3 ACPI Timer Count Select
- 0 24-bit Timer..... default
- 1 32-bit Timer

2 RTC Enable Signal Gated with PSON (SUSC#) in Soft-Off Mode
This bit controls whether RTC control signals are gated during system on/off (PWRGD or SUSC# low). This is to prevent the RTC from being accessed during system on/off when the control signals may not be stable.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

1 Clock Throttling Clock Select (STPCLK#)
This bit controls the timer tick base for the throttle timer.
- 0 30 usec (480 usec cycle time when using a 4-bit timer) ..... default
- 1 1 msec (16 msec cycle time when using a 4-bit timer)

The timer tick base can be further lowered to 7.5 usec (120 usec cycle time when using a 4-bit timer) by setting Rx8D[4] = 1. When Rx8D[4] = 1, the setting of this bit is ignored.

0 Reserved (Do Not Program) .....default = 0

Offset 82 - ACPI Interrupt Select .....RW

7 ATX / AT Power Indicator.....RO
0 ATX
1 AT

6 SUSC# State.....RO
During system on/off, this status bit reports whether RTC signals are stable (whether the signals are still gated) and controls whether the RTC can be accessed. When this bit equals one, RTC signals are stable and the RTC is ready to be accessed.

5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 SUSC# AC-Power-On Default Value .....RO
This bit is written at RTC Index 0D bit-7. If this bit is 0, the system is configured to “default on” when power is connected.

3-0 SCI Interrupt Assignment
This field determines the routing of the ACPI IRQ.
0000 Disabled..... default
0001 IRQ1
0010 Reserved
0011 IRQ3
0100 IRQ4
0101 IRQ5
0110 IRQ6
0111 IRQ7
1000 IRQ8
1001 IRQ9
1010 IRQ10
1011 IRQ11
1100 IRQ12
1101 IRQ13
1110 IRQ14
1111 IRQ15

Offset 85-84 - Primary Interrupt Channel (0000h) .....RW

If a device IRQ is enabled as a Primary IRQ, that device's IRQ can be used to generate wake events. The bits in this register are used in conjunction with:

- PMIO Rx28[7] – Primary Resume Status
- PMIO Rx2A[7] – Primary Resume Enable

If a device on one of the IRQ's is set to enable the Primary Interrupt, once the device generates an IRQ, the PMIO Rx28[7] status bit will become 1 to report the occurrence of the Primary IRQ. If PMIO Rx2A[7] is set to 1 to enable Resume-on-Primary-IRQ, the IRQ then becomes a wake event.

15	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ15 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
14	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ14 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
13	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ13 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
12	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ12 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
11	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ11 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
10	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ10 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
9	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ9 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
8	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ8 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
7	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ7 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
6	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ6 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
5	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ5 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
4	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ4 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
3	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ3 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
2	**Reserved** ..... always reads 0
1	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ1 as Primary Intrpt Channel**
0	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ0 as Primary Intrpt Channel**

Offset 87-86 - Secondary Interrupt Channel (0000h) .... RW

For legacy PMU, the bits in this register are used in conjunction with:

- PMIO Rx28[1] – Secondary Event Timer Timeout Status
- PMIO Rx2A[7] – SMI on Secondary Event Timer Timeout

Secondary IRQ's are different from Primary IRQ's in that systems that resume due to a Secondary IRQ can return directly to suspend state after the secondary event timer times out. For this to work, PMIO Rx2A[1] needs to be set to one to enable SMI-on-Secondary-Event-Timer-Timeout (when PMIO Rx28[1] = 1). The timer's count value can be set via Rx93-90[27-26].

15	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ15 as Secondary Intr Channel**
14	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ14 as Secondary Intr Channel**
13	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ13 as Secondary Intr Channel**
12	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ12 as Secondary Intr Channel**
11	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ11 as Secondary Intr Channel**
10	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ10 as Secondary Intr Channel**
9	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ9 as Secondary Intr Channel**
8	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ8 as Secondary Intr Channel**
7	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ7 as Secondary Intr Channel**
6	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ6 as Secondary Intr Channel**
5	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ5 as Secondary Intr Channel**
4	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ4 as Secondary Intr Channel**
3	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ3 as Secondary Intr Channel**
2	**Reserved** ..... always reads 0
1	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ1 as Secondary Intr Channel**
0	**1/0 = Ena/Disa IRQ0 as Secondary Intr Channel**

Offset 8B-88 – Power Management I/O Base.....RW

31-16 Reserved ..... always reads 0

15-7 Power Management I/O Register Base Address
Port Address for the base of the 128-byte Power Management I/O Register block, corresponding to AD[15:7]. See "Power Management I/O Space Registers" in this document for definitions of the registers in the Power Management I/O Register Block

6-0 0000001b

Offset 8C – Host Bus Power Management Control.....RW

7-4 Thermal Duty Cycle
This field determines the duty cycle of STPCLK# when the THRM# pin is asserted. The duty cycle indicates the percentage of performance (the lower the percentage, the lower the performance and the higher the power savings). The STPCLK# duty cycle when THRM# is NOT asserted is controlled by PMIO Rx10[3:0]. If the setting in that field is lower than the setting in this field, the lower setting will be used for thermal duty cycle.

0000 Reserved ..... default
0001 0-6.25%
0010 6.25-12.50%
0011 18.75-25.00%
0100 31.25-37.50%
0101 37.50-43.75%
0110 43.75-50.00%
0111 50.00-56.25%
1000 56.25-62.50%
1001 62.50-68.75%
1010 68.75-75.00%
1011 75.00-87.50%
1100 75.00-81.25%
1101 81.25-87.50%
1110 87.50-93.75%
1111 93.75-100%

3 THRM Enable
0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable

2-1 Reserved ..... always reads 0

0 CPU Stop Grant Cycle Select
This bit controls whether halt can be used as stop grant cycle.
0 Halt is used as Stop Grant Cycle ..... default
1 Halt is not used as Stop Grant Cycle

This bit is combined with I/O space Rx2C[3] for controlling the start of CPUSTP# assertion during system suspend mode:

Rx2C[3] I/O Space	Rx8C[0] Cfg Space	CPUSTP# Assertion
0	x	Immediate
1	0	Wait for CPU Halt / Stop Grant cycle
1	1	Wait for CPU Stop Grant cycle

Offset 8D – Throttle / Clock Stop Control..... RW

7 Throttle Timer Reset.....def = 0

6-5 Throttle Timer
This field determines the number of bits used for the throttle timer, which in conjunction with the throttle timer tick determines the cycle time of STPCLK#. For example, if a 2-bit timer and a 7.5 usec timer tick are selected, the STPCLK# cycle time would be 30 usec (2**2 x 7.5). If a 4-bit timer and a 7.5 usec timer tick is selected, the cycle time would be 120 usec (2**4 x 7.5).
0x 4-Bit ..... default
10 3-Bit
11 2-Bit

4 Fast Clock (7.5us) as Throttle Timer Tick
This bit controls whether the throttle timer tick uses 7.5 usec as its time base (120 usec cycle time when using a 4-bit timer).
0 Timer Tick is selected by Rx80[1] ..... default
1 Timer Tick is 7.5 usec (Rx80[1] is ignored)

3 SMI Level Output (Low)
0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable (during an SMI event, SMI# is held low until SMI event status is cleared)

2 Internal Clock Stop for PCI Idle
This bit controls whether the internal PCI clock is stopped when PCKRUN# is high.
0 PCI clock is not stopped ..... default
1 PCI clock is stopped

1 Internal Clock Stop During C3
This bit controls whether the internal PCI clock is stopped during C3 state.
0 PCI clock is not stopped ..... default
1 PCI clock is stopped

0 Internal Clock Stop During Suspend
This bit controls whether the internal PCI clock is stopped during Suspend state.
0 PCI clock is not stopped ..... default
1 PCI clock is stopped

Offset 93-90 - GP Timer Control (0000 0000h).....RW

31-30 Conserve Mode Timer Count Value
- 00 1/16 second..... default
- 01 1/8 second
- 10 1 second
- 11 1 minute

29 Conserve Mode Status
This bit reads 1 when in Conserve Mode

28 Conserve Mode
This bit controls whether conserve mode (throttling) is enabled. When this bit is set, the system can enter conserve mode when primary activity is not detected within a given time period (determined by bits 31-30 of this register). Primary activity is defined in PMIO Rx33-30.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

27-26 Secondary Event Timer Count Value
- 00 2 milliseconds..... default
- 01 64 milliseconds
- 10 ½ second
- 11 by EOI + 0.25 milliseconds

25 Secondary Event Occurred Status
This bit reads 1 to indicate that a secondary event has occurred (to resume the system from suspend) and the secondary event timer is counting down.

24 Secondary Event Timer Enable
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

23-16 GP1 Timer Count Value (base defined by bits 5-4)
Write to load count value; Read to get current count

15-8 GP0 Timer Count Value (base defined by bits 1-0)
Write to load count value; Read to get current count

7 GP1 Timer Start
On setting this bit to 1, the GP1 timer loads the value defined by bits 23-16 of this register and starts counting down. The GP1 timer is reloaded at the occurrence of certain peripheral events enabled in the GP Timer Reload Enable Register (Power Management I/O Space Offset 38h). If no such event occurs and the GP1 timer counts down to zero, then the GP1 Timer Timeout Status bit is set to one (bit-3 of the Global Status register at Power Management Register I/O Space Offset 28h). Additionally, if the GP1 Timer Timeout Enable bit is set (bit-3 of the Global Enable register at Power Management Register I/O Space Offset 2Ah), then an SMI is generated.

6 GP1 Timer Automatic Reload
- 0 GP1 Timer stops at 0 ..... default
- 1 Reload GP1 timer automatically after counting down to 0

5-4 GP1 Timer Base
- 00 Disable..... default
- 01 1/16 second
- 10 1 second
- 11 1 minute

3 GP0 Timer Start
On setting this bit to 1, the GP0 timer loads the value defined by bits 15-8 of this register and starts counting down. The GP0 timer is reloaded at the occurrence of certain peripheral events enabled in the GP Timer Reload Enable Register (Power Management I/O Space Offset 38h). If no such event occurs and the GP0 timer counts down to zero, then the GP0 Timer Timeout Status bit is set to one (bit-2 of the Global Status register at Power Management Register I/O Space Offset 28h). Additionally, if the GP0 Timer Timeout Enable bit is set (bit-2 of the Global Enable register at Power Management Register I/O Space Offset 2Ah), then an SMI is generated.

2 GP0 Timer Automatic Reload
- 0 GP0 Timer stops at 0 ..... default
- 1 Reload GP0 timer automatically after counting down to 0

1-0 GP0 Timer Base
- 00 Disable..... default
- 01 1/16 second
- 10 1 second
- 11 1 minute

Offset 94 – Power Well Control ..... WO

7 SMBus Clock Select
- 0 SMBus Clock from 14.31818 MHz Divider
- 1 SMBus Clock from RTC 32.768 KHz ... defult

6 STR Power Well Output Gating

This bit controls whether the STR power well for internal signals is gated during STR.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

5 SUSC#Asserted in STR

This bit controls whether SUSC# is asserted (low) during STR. Normally SUSC# is asserted during STD but not during STR.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

4 SUSST1# / GPO3 Select (Pin P1)
- 0 SUSST1#..... default
- 1 GPO3

3 GPO2 / SUSB# Select (Pin W2)
- 0 SUSB#..... default
- 1 GPO2

Before chip rev C, these definitions were reversed

2 GPO1 / SUSA# Select (Pin T2)
- 0 SUSA# ..... default
- 1 GPO1

Before chip rev C, these definitions were reversed

1-0 GPO0 Output Select (Pin P4)

This field controls the GPO0 output signal for Pulse Width Modulation.
- 00 GPO0 Fixed Output Level (defined by PMIO Rx4C[0]) ..... default
- 01 GPO0 output is 1 Hz "SLOWCLK"
- 10 GPO0 output is 4 Hz "SLOWCLK"
- 11 GPO0 output is 16 Hz "SLOWCLK"

Offset 95 – Miscellaneous Power Well Control ..... RW

7 CPUSTP# to SUSST# Delay Select

This bit controls the delay between the deassertion of CPUSTP# and the deassertion of SUSST# during a resume.
- 0 1 msec minimum ..... default
- 1 125 usec minimum

6 SUSST# Deasserted Before PWRGD for STD
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable (SUST# is deasserted before PWRGD when resuming from STD)

5 Keyboard / Mouse Port Swap

This bit determines whether the keyboard and mouse ports can be swapped.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3 SMB2 / GPO Select
- 0 SMBDT2 / SMBCK2 ..... default
- 1 GPO26 / GPO27

2 AOL 2 SMB Slave

This bit controls whether external SMB masters can access internal SMB registers (for Alert-On-LAN).
- 0 Enable (external SMB masters may reset / resume the system (when Rx96[4]=1) or detect GPI status) ..... default
- 1 Disable

1 SUSCLK / GPO4 Select
- 0 SUSCLK..... default
- 1 GPO4

0 USB Wakeup for STR / STD / SoftOff

This bit controls whether USB Wakeup is enabled when PMIO Rx21-20[14] (USB Wakeup Status) = 1. This allows wakeup from STR, STD, Soft Off, and POS.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

Offset 96 – Power On / Reset Control ..... RW

7-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Power On / Reset via AOL2 SMBus GPIO

This bit controls whether power-on / reset by external masters is enabled. To enable this function, Rx95[2] must be 0.
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

3-0 CPU Frequency Strapping Value Output to NMI, INTR, IGNNE#, and A20M# during RESET#

The value written to this field is strapped through NMI, INTR, IGNNE#, and A20M# during RESET# to determine the multiplier for setting the CPU's internal frequency. If the CPU hangs due to inappropriate settings written here, the GP3 timer (second timeout) can be used to initiate a system reboot (PMIO Rx42[2] = 1). Refer to the BIOS Porting Guide for additional details.

Offset 98 – GP2 / GP3 Timer Control .....RW

7 GP3 Timer Start
On setting this bit to 1, the GP3 timer loads the value defined by Rx5A and starts counting down. The GP3 timer is reloaded at the occurrence of certain events enabled in the GP Timer Reload Enable Register (Power Management I/O Space Offset 38h). If no such event occurs and the GP3 timer counts down to zero, then the GP3 Timer Timeout Status bit is set to one (bit-13 of the Global Status register at Power Management Register I/O Space Offset 28h). Additionally, if the GP3 Timer Timeout Enable bit is set (bit-13 of the Global Enable register at Power Management Register I/O Space Offset 2Ah), then an SMI is generated.

6 GP3 Timer Automatic Reload
- 0 GP3 Timer stops at 0 ..... default
- 1 Reload GP3 timer automatically after counting down to 0

5-4 GP3 Timer Tick Select
- 00 Disable ..... default
- 01 1/16 second
- 10 1 second
- 11 1 minute

3 GP2 Timer Start
On setting this bit to 1, the GP2 timer loads the value defined by Rx59 and starts counting down. The GP2 timer is reloaded at the occurrence of certain events enabled in the GP Timer Reload Enable Register (Power Management I/O Space Offset 38h). If no such event occurs and the GP2 timer counts down to zero, then the GP2 Timer Timeout Status bit is set to one (bit-12 of the Global Status register at Power Management Register I/O Space Offset 28h). Additionally, if the GP2 Timer Timeout Enable bit is set (bit-12 of the Global Enable register at Power Management Register I/O Space Offset 2Ah), then an SMI is generated.

2 GP2 Timer Automatic Reload
- 0 GP2 Timer stops at 0 ..... default
- 1 Reload GP2 timer automatically after counting down to 0

1-0 GP2 Timer Tick Select
- 00 Disable ..... default
- 01 1/16 second
- 10 1 second
- 11 1 minute

Offset 99 – GP2 Timer..... RW

7 Write: GP2 Timer Load Value.....default = 0
Read: GP2 Timer Current Count

Offset 9A – GP3 Timer..... RW

7 Write: GP3 Timer Load Value.....default = 0
Read: GP3 Timer Current Count

Offset C3-C0 – Power Management Capability..... RO

31-16 Power Management Capability.always reads 0002h
15-8 Next Pointer .....always reads 00h
7-0 Capability ID .....always reads 01h

Offset C7-C4 – Power Mgmt Capability CSR..... RW

31-24 Power Management Data.....always reads 00h
23-16 PM CSR P2P Support Extensions.always reads 00h
15-0 PM Control / Status (D0/D3 Only)..default = 0000h

System Management Bus-Specific Configuration Registers

Offset D1-D0 – SMBus I/O Base .....RW

15-4 I/O Base (16-byte I/O space) ..... default = 00h
3-0 Fixed ..... always reads 0001b

Offset D2 – SMBus Host Configuration .....RW

7-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0
3 SMBus Interrupt Select
0 SMI ..... default
1 SCI
2 SMBus Clock From 64K Source (Divider from 14.31818 MHz)
0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable
1 SMBus IRQ
0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable
0 SMBus Host Controller Enable
0 Disable SMB controller functions ..... default
1 Enable SMB controller functions

Offset D3 – SMBus Host Slave Command..... RW

7-0 SMBus Host Slave Command Code.....default=0

Offset D4 – SMBus Slave Address for Port 1 ..... RW

7-1 SMBus Slave Address for Port 1.....default=0
0 Read / Write for Shadow Port 1

Offset D5 – SMBus Slave Address for Port 2 ..... RW

7-1 SMBus Slave Address for Port 2.....default=0
0 Read / Write for Shadow Port 2

Offset D6 – SMBus Revision ID.....RO

7-0 SMBus Revision Code

General Purpose I/O Control Registers

Offset E0 – GPI Inversion Control .....RW

7-0 GPI[27-24, 19-16] Input Inversion
- 0 Non-inverted input ..... default
- 1 Inverted input

Offset E1 – GPI SCI / SMI Select.....RW

7-0 GPI[27-24, 19-16] SCI / SMI Select

When GPI[27-24,19-16] are set to enable SCI / SMI generation (PMIO Rx52), this field determines whether an SCI or SMI is generated.
- 0 SCI ..... default
- 1 SMI

Offset E4 – GPO Pin Select .....RW

7 GPO22-23 / IOR#, IOW# Select (Pins R9, T7)
- 0 R9 = GPO22, T7 = GPO23 ..... default
- 1 R9 = IOR#, T7 = IOW#

6 ACSDIN2,3 / GPIO20,21 Select (Pins M1, L3)

This bit is ignored if any of RxE5 bits 1, 2, 4, or 5 = 1
- 0 M1 = ACSDIN2, L3 = ACSDIN3..... default
- 1 M1 = GPIO20, L3 = GPIO21

5 SA[19:16] / GPO[19:16] Select (R10, U8, Y9, W9)
- 0 SA[19:16]..... default
- 1 GPO[19:16]

4 GPIO[15:12] Direction
- 0 Input (pins are GPI[15:12])..... default
- 1 Output (pins are GPO[15:12])

3 GPIO[11:8] Direction
- 0 Input (pins are GPI[11:8])..... default
- 1 Output (pins are GPO[11:8])

2 SLP# / GPO7 Select (Pin K19)
- 0 K19 = SLP#..... default
- 1 K19 = GPO7

1 PCISTP# / GPO6 Select (Pin V6)
- 0 V6 = PCISTP#..... default
- 1 V6 = GPO6

0 CPUSTP# / GPO5 Select (Pin Y5)
- 0 Y5 = CPUSTP#..... default
- 1 Y5 = GPO5

Offset E5 – GPIO I/O Select 1 ..... RW

7-6 Reserved .....always reads 0

5-3 CD: Reserved.....always reads 0

5 CE: AGPBZ# on ACSDIN3 (Pin L3)
- 0 L3 = ACSDIN3 / GPIO21 / PCS1# ..... default
- 1 L3 = AGPBZ# (bit 2 and RxE4[6] are ignored)

4 CE: VGATE on ACSDIN2 (Pin M1)
- 0 M1 = ACSDIN2 / GPIO20 / PCS0# ..... default
- 1 M1 = VGATE (bit 1 and RxE4[6] are ignored)

3 CE: Intel Speedstep Function
- 0 Enable (Pin U6 = VIDSEL, W5 = GHI#, C8 = VRDPSLP) ..... default
- 1 Disable (Pin U6 = GPIO31 / GPIOE, W5 = GPIO30 / GPIOD, C8 = GPIO9)

2 PCS1# on ACSDIN3 (Pin L3)
- 0 L3 = ACSDIN3 / GPIO21 / AGPBZ / SLPBTN# ..... default
- 1 L3 = PCS1# (RxE4[6] ignored)

1 PCS0# on ACSDIN2 (Pin M1)
- 0 M1 = ACSDIN2 / GPIO20 / VGATE.... default
- 1 M1 = PCS0# (RxE4[6] ignored)

0 IORDY / GPI19 Select (Pin R8)
- 0 R8 = IORDY..... default
- 1 R8 = GPI19

Offset E6 – GPIO I/O Select 2 ..... RW

7 GPI31 / GPO31 (GPIOE) Select (Pin U6)
- 0 U6 = GPI31..... default
- 1 U6 = GPO31 / GPIOE

6 GPI30 / GPO30 (GPIOD) Select (Pin W5)
- 0 W5 = GPI30..... default
- 1 W5 = GPO30 / GPIOD

5-2 Reserved .....always reads 0

1 GPI25 / GPO25 (GPIOC) Select (Pin T6)
- 0 T6 = GPI25..... default
- 1 T6 = GPO25 / GPIOC

0 GPI24 / GPO24 (GPIOA) Select (Pin V4)
- 0 V4 = GPI24..... default
- 1 V4 = GPO24 / GPIOA

Offset E7 – GPO Output Type..... RW

These bits determine whether the indicated GPO pin is open drain or TTL when the corresponding bit of RxE6 = 1.

7 GPO31 OD/TTL Select (Pin U6)

6 GPO30 OD/TTL Select (Pin W5)

5-2 Reserved .....always reads 0

1 GPO25 OD/TTL Select (Pin T6)

0 GPO24 OD/TTL Select (Pin V4)

For all defined bits above:
- 0 OD ..... default
- 1 TTL

Power Management I/O-Space Registers

Basic Power Management Control and Status

I/O Offset 1-0 - Power Management Status .....RWC

The bits in this register are set only by hardware and can be reset by software by writing a one to the desired bit position.

15 **Wakeup Status** ..... default = 0
This bit is set when the system is in the suspend state and an enabled resume event occurs. Upon setting this bit, the system automatically transitions from the suspend state to the normal working state (from C3 to C0 for the processor).

14-12 **Reserved** ..... always reads 0

11 **Abnormal Power-Off Status** ..... default = 0

10 **RTC Alarm Status** ..... default = 0
This bit is set when the RTC generates an alarm (on assertion of the RTC IRQ signal).

9 **Sleep Button Status** ..... default = 0
This bit is set when the sleep button (SLPBTN# / IRQ6 / GPI4) is pressed.

8 **Power Button Status** ..... default = 0
This bit is set when the PWRBTN# signal is asserted low. If the PWRBTN# signal is held low for more than four seconds, this bit is cleared, the PBOR_STS bit is set, and the system will transition into the soft off state.

7-6 **Reserved** ..... always reads 0

5 **Global Status** ..... default = 0
This bit is set by hardware when the BIOS Release bit is set (typically by an SMI routine to release control of the SCI / SMI lock). When this bit is cleared by software (by writing a one to this bit position) the BIOS Release bit is also cleared at the same time by hardware.

4 **Bus Master Status** ..... default = 0
This bit is set when a system bus master requests the system bus. All PCI master, ISA master and ISA DMA devices are included.

3-1 **Reserved** ..... always reads 0

0 **ACPI Timer Carry Status** ..... default = 0
The bit is set when the 23rd (31st) bit of the 24 (32) bit ACPI power management timer changes.

I/O Offset 3-2 - Power Management Enable ..... RW

The bits in this register correspond to the bits in the Power Management Status Register at offset 1-0.

15 **Reserved** .....always reads 0

14-12 **Reserved** .....always reads 0

11 **Reserved** .....always reads 0

10 **RTC Alarm Enable** .....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger either an SCI or an SMI (depending on the setting of the SCI Enable bit) to be generated when the RTC Status bit is set.

9 **Sleep Button Enable** .....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger either an SCI or SMI when the Sleep Button Status bit is set.

8 **Power Button Enable** .....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger either an SCI or an SMI (depending on the setting of the SCI Enable bit) to be generated when the Power Button Status bit is set.

7-6 **Reserved** .....always reads 0

5 **Global Enable** .....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger either an SCI or an SMI (depending on the setting of the SCI Enable bit) to be generated when the Global Status bit is set.

4 **Reserved** .....always reads 0

3-1 **Reserved** .....always reads 0

0 **ACPI Timer Enable**.....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger either an SCI or an SMI (depending on the setting of the SCI Enable bit) to be generated when the Timer Status bit is set.

I/O Offset 5-4 - Power Management Control.....RW

15 Soft Resume

This bit is used to allow a system using an AT power supply to operate as if an ATX power supply were being used. Refer to the BIOS Porting Guide for implementation details.

0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable

14 Reserved ..... always reads 0

13 Sleep Enable ..... always reads 0

This is a write-only bit; reads from this bit always return zero. Writing a one to this bit causes the system to sequence into the sleep (suspend) state defined by the Sleep Type field.

12-10 Sleep Type

000 Normal On
001 Suspend to RAM (STR)
010 Suspend to Disk (STD) (also called Soft Off). The VCC power plane is turned off while the VCCS and VBAT planes remain on.
011 Reserved
100 Power On Suspend without Reset
101 Power On Suspend with CPU Reset
110 Power On Suspend with CPU/PCI Reset
111 Reserved

In any sleep state, there is minimal interface between powered and non-powered planes so that the effort for hardware design may be well managed.

9 Reserved ..... always reads 0

8 STD Command Generates System Reset Only

0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable (STD command generates a system reset and not STD)

7-3 Reserved ..... always reads 0

2 Global Release ..... **WO**, default = 0

This bit is set by ACPI software to indicate the release of the SCI / SMI lock. Upon setting of this bit, the hardware automatically sets the BIOS Status bit. The bit is cleared by hardware when the BIOS Status bit is cleared by software. Note that the setting of this bit will cause an SMI to be generated if the BIOS Enable bit is set (bit-5 of the Global Enable register at offset 2Ah).

1 Bus Master Reload

This bit controls whether bus master requests (PMIO Rx00[4] = 1) transition the processor from C3 to C0 state.

0 Bus master requests are ignored by power management logic ..... default
1 Bus master requests transition the processor from the C3 state to the C0 state

0 SCI Enable

This bit controls whether SCI or SMI is generated for power management events triggered by the Power Button, Sleep Button, and RTC (when PMIO Rx1-0 bits 8, 9, or 10 equal one).

0 Generate SMI..... default
1 Generate SCI

Note that certain power management events can be programmed individually to generate an SCI or SMI independent of the setting of this bit (refer to the General Purpose SCI Enable and General Purpose SMI Enable registers at offsets 22 and 24). Also, Timer Status & Global Status always generate SCI and BIOS Status always generates SMI.

I/O Offset 0B-08 - Power Management Timer ..... RW

31-24 Extended Timer Value

This field reads back 0 if the 24-bit timer option is selected (Rx41 bit-3).

23-0 Timer Value

This read-only field returns the running count of the power management timer. This is a 24/32-bit counter that runs off a 3.579545 MHz clock, and counts while in the S0 (working) system state. The timer is reset to an initial value of zero during a reset, and then continues counting until the 14.31818 MHz input to the chip is stopped. If the clock is restarted without a reset, then the counter will continue counting from where it stopped.

Processor Power Management Registers

I/O Offset 13-10 - Processor & PCI Bus Control.....RW

31-12 Reserved ..... always reads 0

11 PCISTP# Asserted when PCKRUN# is Deasserted
- 0 Enable..... default
- 1 Disable

10 PCI Bus Clock Run Without Stop
- 0 PCKRUN# is always asserted ..... default
- 1 PCKRUN# will be de-activated after the PCI bus is idle for 26 clocks

9 Host Clock Stop
This bit controls whether CPUSTP# is asserted in C3 and S1 states. Normally CPUSTP# is not asserted in C3 and S1 states, only STPCLK# is asserted.
- 0 CPUSTP# will not be asserted in C3 and S1 states (only STPCLK# is asserted)..... default
- 1 CPUSTP# will be asserted in C3 and S1 states

8 Assert SLP# for Processor Level 3 Read
This bit controls whether SLP# is asserted in C3 state.
- 0 SLP# is not asserted in C3 state ..... default
- 1 SLP# is asserted in C3 state

Used with Intel CPUs only.

1 Lower CPU Voltage During C3 / S1
This bit controls whether the CPU voltage is lowered when in C3/S1 state. The voltage is lowered using the VRDSLP signal to the voltage regulator (PMIO RxE5[3] must be 0 to enable the voltage change function).
- 0 Disable (normal voltage during C3/S1)..... def
- 1 Enable (lower voltage during C3/S1)

6-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Throttling Enable
Setting this bit starts clock throttling (modulating the STPCLK# signal) regardless of the CPU state. The throttling duty cycle is determined by bits 3-0 of this register.

3-0 Throttling Duty Cycle
This field determines the duty cycle of the STPCLK# signal when the system is in throttling mode ("Throttling Enable" bit set to one). The duty cycle indicates the percentage of performance (the lower the percentage, the lower the performance and the higher the power savings).

0000 Reserved
0001 0-6.25%
0010 6.25-12.50%
0011 18.75-25.00%
0100 31.25-37.50%
0101 37.50-43.75%
0110 43.75-50.00%
0111 50.00-56.25%
1000 56.25-62.50%
1001 62.50-68.75%
1010 68.75-75.00%
1011 75.00-87.50%
1100 75.00-81.25%
1101 81.25-87.50%
1110 87.50-93.75%
1111 93.75-100%

I/O Offset 14 - Processor Level 2.....RO

7-0 Level 2 .....always reads 0
Reads from this register put the processor into the Stop Grant state (the VT8233 asserts STPCLK# to suspend the processor). Wake up from Stop Grant state is by interrupt (INTR, SMI, and SCI).

Reads from this register return all zeros; writes have no effect.

I/O Offset 15 - Processor Level 3.....RO

7-0 Level 3 .....always reads 0
Reads from this register put the processor in the C3 clock state with the STPCLK# signal asserted. If Rx10[9] = 1 then the CPU clock is also stopped by asserting CPUSTP#. Wakeup from the C3 state is by interrupt (INTR, SMI, and SCI).

Reads from this register return all zeros; writes have no effect.

General Purpose Power Management Registers

I/O Offset 21-20 - General Purpose Status.....RWC

15 Reserved ..... always reads 0

14 USB Wake-Up Status
For STR / STD / Soff

13 AC97 Wake-Up Status
Can be set only in suspend mode

12 Battery Low Status
Set when the BATLOW# input is asserted low.

11 Notebook Lid Status
Set when the LID input detects the edge selected by Rx2C bit-7 (0=rising, 1=falling).

10 Thermal Detect Status
Set when the THRM# input detects the edge selected by Rx2C bit-6 (0=rising, 1=falling).

9 USB Resume Status
Set when a USB peripheral generates a resume event.

8 Ring Status
Set when the RING# input is asserted low.

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6 INTRUDER# Status
Set when the INTRUDER# pin is asserted low.

5 PME# Status
Set when the PME# pin is asserted low.

4 EXTSMI# Status
Set when the EXTSMI# pin is asserted low.

3 Internal LAN PME Status
Set when the internal LAN PME signal is asserted.

2 Internal KBC PME Status
Set when the internal KBC PME signal is asserted.

1 GPI1 Status
Set when the GPI1 pin is asserted low.

0 GPI0 Status
Set when the GPI0 pin is asserted low.

Note that the above bits correspond one for one with the bits of the General Purpose SCI Enable and General Purpose SMI Enable registers at offsets 22 and 24: an SCI or SMI is generated if the corresponding bit of the General Purpose SCI or SMI Enable registers, respectively, is set to one.

The above bits are set by hardware only and can only be cleared by writing a one to the desired bit.

I/O Offset 23-22 - General Purpose SCI Enable ..... RW

15 Reserved .....always reads 0
14 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[14].....def=0
13 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[13].....def=0
12 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[12].....def=0
11 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[11].....def=0
10 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[10].....def=0
9 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[9].....def=0
8 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[8].....def=0
7 Reserved .....always reads 0
6 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[6].....def=0
5 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[5].....def=0
4 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[4].....def=0
3 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[3].....def=0
2 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[2].....def=0
1 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[1].....def=0
0 Enable SCI on setting of Rx21-20[0].....def=0

These bits allow generation of an SCI using a separate set of conditions from those used for generating an SMI.

I/O Offset 25-24 - General Purpose SMI Enable ..... RW

15 Reserved .....always reads 0
14 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[14].....def=0
13 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[13].....def=0
12 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[12].....def=0
11 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[11].....def=0
10 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[10].....def=0
9 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[9].....def=0
8 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[8].....def=0
7 Reserved .....always reads 0
6 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[6].....def=0
5 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[5].....def=0
4 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[4].....def=0
3 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[3].....def=0
2 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[2].....def=0
1 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[1].....def=0
0 Enable SMI on setting of Rx21-20[0].....def=0

These bits allow generation of an SMI using a separate set of conditions from those used for generating an SCI.

Generic Power Management Registers

I/O Offset 29-28 - Global Status .....RWC

15 GPIO Range 1 Access Status..... default = 0
14 GPIO Range 0 Access Status..... default = 0
13 GP3 Timer Timeout Status ..... default = 0
12 GP2 Timer Timeout Status ..... default = 0
11 SERIRQ SMI Status..... default = 0
10 Rx5[5] Write SMI Status..... default = 0
This bit reports whether Rx5[5] is written. If Rx2B[3] is set to enable SMI, an SMI in generated when this bit = 1.
9 Reserved ..... always reads 0
8 PCKRUN# Resume Status ..... default = 0
This bit is set when PCI bus peripherals wake up the system by asserting PCKRUN#
7 Primary IRQ/INIT/NMI/SMI Resume Statusdef=0
This bit is set at the occurrence of primary IRQs as defined in Rx85-84 of PCI configuration space
6 Software SMI Status..... default = 0
This bit is set when the SMI Command port (Rx2F) is written.
5 BIOS Status ..... default = 0
This bit is set when the Global Release bit is set to one (typically by the ACPI software to release control of the SCI/SMI lock). When this bit is reset (by writing a one to this bit position) the Global Release bit is reset at the same time by hardware.
4 Legacy USB Status..... default = 0
This bit is set when a legacy USB event occurs. This is normally used for USB keyboards.
3 GP1 Timer Time Out Status ..... default = 0
This bit is set when the GP1 timer times out.
2 GP0 Timer Time Out Status ..... default = 0
This bit is set when the GP0 timer times out.
1 Secondary Event Timer Time Out Status..... def=0
This bit is set when the secondary event timer times out.
0 Primary Activity Status..... default = 0
This bit is set at the occurrence of any enabled primary system activity (see the Primary Activity Detect Status register at offset 30h and the Primary Activity Detect Enable register at offset 34h). After checking this bit, software can check the status bits in the Primary Activity Detect Status register at offset 30h to identify the specific source of the primary event. Note that setting this bit can be enabled to reload the GP0 timer (see bit-0 of the GP Timer Reload Enable register at offset 38).

Note that SMI can be generated based on the setting of any of the above bits (see the Rx2A Global Enable register bit descriptions in the right hand column of this page).

The bits in this register are set by hardware only and can only be cleared by writing a one to the desired bit position.

The bits in this register are for SMI's only while the bits in Rx21-20 are for SMI's and SCI's

I/O Offset 2B-2A - Global Enable ..... RW

15 GPIO Range 1 SMI Enable .....default = 0
14 GPIO Range 0 SMI Enable .....default = 0
13 GP3 Timer Timeout SMI Enable.....default = 0
12 GP2 Timer Timeout SMI Enable.....default = 0
11 SERIRQ SMI Enable .....default = 0
10 SMI on Sleep Enable Write .....default = 0
9 Reserved .....always reads 0
8 PCKRUN# Resume Enable .....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger an SMI to be generated when the PCKRUN# Resume Status bit is set.
7 Primary IRQ/INIT/NMI/SMI Resume Enable In Post State .....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger an SMI to be generated when the Primary IRQ / INIT / NMI / SMI Resume Status bit is set.
6 SMI on Software SMI .....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger an SMI to be generated when the Software SMI Status bit is set.
5 SMI on BIOS Status.....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger an SMI to be generated when the BIOS Status bit is set.
4 SMI on Legacy USB .....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger an SMI to be generated when the Legacy USB Status bit is set.
3 SMI on GP1 Timer Time Out.....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger an SMI to be generated when the GP1 Timer Timeout Status bit is set.
2 SMI on GP0 Timer Time Out.....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger an SMI to be generated when the GP0 Timer Timeout Status bit is set.
1 SMI on Secondary Event Timer Time Out ....def=0
This bit may be set to trigger an SMI to be generated when the Secondary Event Timer Timeout Status bit is set.
0 SMI on Primary Activity .....default = 0
This bit may be set to trigger an SMI to be generated when the Primary Activity Status bit is set.

I/O Offset 2D-2C - Global Control.....RW

15-12 Reserved ..... always reads 0

11 IDE Secondary Bus Power-Off
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

10 IDE Primary Bus Power-Off
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

9 Reserved ..... always reads 0

8 SMI Active
- 0 SMI Inactive..... default
- 1 SMI Active. If the SMI Lock bit is set, this bit needs to be written with a 1 to clear it before the next SMI can be generated.

7 LID Triggering Polarity
- 0 Rising Edge ..... default
- 1 Falling Edge

6 THRM# Triggering Polarity
- 0 Rising Edge ..... default
- 1 Falling Edge

5 Battery Low Resume Disable
- 0 Enable resume ..... default
- 1 Disable resume from suspend when BATLOW# is asserted

4 SMI Lock
- 0 Disable SMI Lock
- 1 Enable SMI Lock (SMI low to gate for the next SMI) ..... default

3 Wait for Halt / Stop Grant Cycle for CPUSTP# Assertion
- 0 Don't wait..... default
- 1 Wait

This bit works with Rx8C[0] of PCI configuration space to control the start of CPUSTP# assertion.

2 Power Button Triggering Select
- 0 SCI/SMI generated by PWRBTN# rising edge ..... default
- 1 SCI/SMI generated by PWRBTN# low level

Set to zero to avoid the situation where the Power Button Status bit is set to wake up the system then reset again by PBOR Status to switch the system into the soft-off state.

1 BIOS Release

This bit is set by legacy software to indicate release of the SCI/SMI lock. Upon setting of this bit, hardware automatically sets the Global Status bit. This bit is cleared by hardware when the Global Status bit cleared by software.

Note that if the Global Enable bit is set (Power Management Enable register Rx2[5]), then setting this bit causes an SCI to be generated (because setting this bit causes the Global Status bit to be set).

0 SMI Enable
- 0 Disable all SMI generation..... default
- 1 Enable SMI generation

I/O Offset 2F - SMI Command ..... RW

7-0 SMI Command

Writing to this port sets the Software SMI Status bit. Note that if the Software SMI Enable bit is set (see Global Enable register Rx2A[6]), then an SMI is generated.

I/O Offset 33-30 - Primary Activity Detect Status.....RWC

These bits correspond to the Primary Activity Detect Enable bits in Rx37-34. If the corresponding bit is set in that register, setting of a bit below will cause the Primary Activity Status (PACT_STS) bit to be set (Global Status register Rx28[0]). All bits in this register default to 0, are set by hardware only, and may only be cleared by writing 1s to the desired bit.

31-11 Reserved .....always read 0

10 Audio Access Status ..... (AUD_STS)
Set if Audio is accessed.

9 Keyboard Controller Access Status..... (KBC_STS)
Set if the KBC is accessed via I/O port 60h.

8 VGA Access Status..... (VGA_STS)
Set if the VGA port is accessed via I/O ports 3B0-3DFh or memory space A0000-BFFFFh.

7 Parallel Port Access Status..... (LPT_STS)
Set if the parallel port is accessed via I/O ports 278-27Fh or 378-37Fh (LPT2 or LPT1).

6 Serial Port B Access Status ..... (COMB_STS)
Set if the serial port is accessed via I/O ports 2F8-2FFh or 2E8-2Efh (COM2 and COM4 respectively).

5 Serial Port A Access Status ..... (COMA_STS)
Set if the serial port is accessed via I/O ports 3F8-3FFh or 3E8-3EFh (COM1 and COM3, respectively).

4 Floppy Access Status.....(FDC_STS)
Set if the floppy controller is accessed via I/O ports 3F0-3F5h or 3F7h.

3 Secondary IDE Access Status.....(SIDE_STS)
Set if the IDE controller is accessed via I/O ports 170-177h or 376h.

2 Primary IDE Access Status ..... (PIDE_STS)
Set if the IDE controller is accessed via I/O ports 1F0-1F7h or 3F6h.

1 Primary Interrupt Activity Status.....(PIRQ_STS)
Set on the occurrence of a primary interrupt (enabled via the "Primary Interrupt Channel" register at Function 4 PCI configuration register offset 44h).

0 PCI Master Access Status..... (DRQ_STS)
Set on the occurrence of PCI master activity.

Note: Setting of Primary Activity Status (PACT_STS) may be done to enable a "Primary Activity Event": an SMI will be generated if the Primary Activity Enable bit is set (Global Enable register Rx2A[0]) and/or the GP0 timer will be reloaded if the "GP0 Timer Reload on Primary Activity" bit is set (GP Timer Reload Enable register Rx38[0]).

Note: Bits 2-9 above also correspond to bits of GP Timer Reload Enable register Rx38: If bits are set in that register, setting a corresponding bit in this register will cause the GP1 timer to be reloaded.

I/O Offset 37-34 - Primary Activity Detect Enable..... RW

These bits correspond to the Primary Activity Detect Status bits in Rx33-30. Setting of any of these bits also sets the Primary Activity Status (PACT_STS) bit (Rx28[0]) which causes the GP0 timer to be reloaded (if the Primary Activity GP0 Enable bit is set) or generates an SMI (if Primary Activity Enable is set).

31-11 Reserved ..... always read 0

10 SMI on Audio Status ..... (AUD_EN)
0 Don't set PACT_STS if AUD_STS is set .... def
1 Set PACT_STS if AUD_STS is set

9 SMI on Keyboard Controller Status..... (KBC_EN)
0 Don't set PACT_STS if KBC_STS is set..... def
1 Set PACT_STS if KBC_STS is set

8 SMI on VGA Status..... (VGA_EN)
0 Don't set PACT_STS if VGA_STS is set .... def
1 Set PACT_STS if VGA_STS is set

7 SMI on Parallel Port Status..... (LPT_EN)
0 Don't set PACT_STS if LPT_STS is set..... def
1 Set PACT_STS if LPT_STS is set

6 SMI on Serial Port B Status ..... (COMB_EN)
0 Don't set PACT_STS if COMB_STS is set . def
1 Set PACT_STS if COMB_STS is set

5 SMI on Serial Port A Status ..... (COMA_EN)
0 Don't set PACT_STS if COMA_STS is set . def
1 Set PACT_STS if COMA_STS is set

4 SMI on Floppy Status.....(FDC_EN)
0 Don't set PACT_STS if FDC_STS is set ..... def
1 Set PACT_STS if FDC_STS is set

3 SMI on Secondary IDE Status.....(SIDE_EN)
0 Don't set PACT_STS if SIDE_STS is set .... def
1 Set PACT_STS if SIDE_STS is set

2 SMI on PrimaryIDE Status ..... (PIDE_EN)
0 Don't set PACT_STS if PIDE_STS is set .... def
1 Set PACT_STS if PIDE_STS is set

1 SMI on Primary IRQ Status..... (PIRQ_EN)
0 Don't set PACT_STS if PIRQ_STS is set.... def
1 Set PACT_STS if PIRQ_STS is set

0 SMI on PCI Master Status..... (DRQ_EN)
0 Don't set PACT_STS if DRQ_STS is set .... def
1 Set PACT_STS if DRQ_STS is set

I/O Offset 3B-38 - GP Timer Reload Enable .....RW

All bits in this register default to 0 on power up.

31-8 Reserved ..... always reads 0

7 GP1 Timer Reload on KBC Access
- 0 Normal GP1 Timer Operation..... default
- 1 Setting of KBC_STS causes the GP1 timer to reload.

6 GP1 Timer Reload on Serial Port Access
- 0 Normal GP1 Timer Operation ..... default
- 1 Setting of COMA_STS or COMB_STS causes the GP1 timer to reload.

5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 GP1 Timer Reload on VGA Access
- 0 Normal GP1 Timer Operation ..... default
- 1 Setting of VGA_STS causes the GP1 timer to reload.

3 GP1 Timer Reload on IDE/Floppy Access
- 0 Normal GP1 Timer Operation ..... default
- 1 Setting of FDC_STS, SIDE_STS, or PIDE_STS causes the GP1 timer to reload.

2 GP3 Timer Reload on GPIO Range 1 Access
- 0 Normal GP3 Timer Operation ..... default
- 1 Setting of GR1_STS causes the GP3 timer to reload.

1 GP2 Timer Reload on GPIO Range 0 Access
- 0 Normal GP2 Timer Operation ..... default
- 1 Setting of GR0_STS causes the GP2 timer to reload.

0 GP0 Timer Reload on Primary Activity
- 0 Normal GP0 Timer Operation ..... default
- 1 Setting of PACT_STS causes the GP0 timer to reload. Primary activities are enabled via the Primary Activity Detect Enable register (offset 37-34) with status recorded in the Primary Activity Detect Status register (offset 33-30).

I/O Offset 40 – Extended I/O Trap Status..... RWC

7-5 Reserved .....always reads 0

4 BIOS Write Access Status

3 GP3 Timer Second Timeout With No Cycles
- 0 Disable.....default
- 1 Enable (GP3 timer timed out twice with no cycles in between)

2 GP3 Timer Second Timeout Status

1 GPIO Range 3 Access Status

0 GPIO Range 2 Access Status

I/O Offset 42 – Extended I/O Trap Enable..... RW

7-5 Reserved .....always reads 0

4 SMI on BIOS Write Access

This bit controls whether SMI is generated when BIOS Write Access Status Rx40[4] = 1.
- 0 Disable.....default
- 1 Enable (can be reset only by OCI_Reset)

3 Reserved .....always reads 0

2 GP3 Timer Second Timeout Reboot

This bit controls whether the system is rebooted when the GP3 timer times out twice (Rx40[2] = 1).
- 0 Disable.....default
- 1 Enable

1 SMI on GPIO Range 3 Access

This bit controls whether SMI is generated when GPIO range 3 is accessed (Rx40[1] = 1)
- 0 Disable.....default
- 1 Enable

0 SMI on GPIO Range 2 Access

This bit controls whether SMI is generated when GPIO range 2 is accessed (Rx40[0] = 1)
- 0 Disable.....default
- 1 Enable

General Purpose I/O Registers

I/O Offset 45 – SMI / IRQ / Resume Status ..... RO

7-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Latest PCSn Status
- 0 Latest PCSn was an I/O Read
- 1 Latest PCSn was an I/O Write

3 Serial SMI Status
This bit is used to report a Serial-IRQ-generated SMI.

2 Reserved ..... always reads 0

1 SMBus IRQ Status
This bit is used to report an SMBus SMI.

0 SMBus Resume Status
This bit is used to report an SMBus Resume Event.

I/O Offset 4B-48 - GPI Port Input Value (GPIVAL) ..... RO

31-0 GPI[31-0] Input Value ..... Read Only

I/O Offset 4F-4C - GPO Port Output Value (GPOVAL)RW

Reads from this register return the last value written (held on chip). Some GPIO pins can be used as both input and output (GPIO pins 8-15 and 20-31). The output type of these pins is OD (open drain) so to use one of these pins as an input pin, a one must be written to the corresponding bit of this register. See also Function 0 RxE4[4-3] for I/O control of GPIO pins 8-15.

31-0 GPO[31-0] Output Value.....def = FFFFFFFFh

I/O Offset 50 – GPI Pin Change Status .....RW

7 GPI27 Pin Change Status ..... default = 0
6 GPI26 Pin Change Status ..... default = 0
5 GPI25 Pin Change Status ..... default = 0
4 GPI24 Pin Change Status ..... default = 0
3 GPI19 Pin Change Status ..... default = 0
2 GPI18 Pin Change Status ..... default = 0
1 GPI17 Pin Change Status ..... default = 0
0 GPI16 Pin Change Status ..... default = 0

I/O Offset 52 – GPI Pin Change SCI/SMI Select.....RW

7 GPI27 Pin SCI / SMI Select
6 GPI26 Pin SCI / SMI Select
5 GPI25 Pin SCI / SMI Select
4 GPI24 Pin SCI / SMI Select
3 GPI19 Pin SCI / SMI Select
2 GPI18 Pin SCI / SMI Select
1 GPI17 Pin SCI / SMI Select
0 GPI16 Pin SCI / SMI Select
- 0 SCI on pin input change ..... default
- 1 SMI on pin input change

I/O Trap Registers

I/O Offset 57-54 – I/O Trap PCI Data (CE Only).....RO

31-0 PCI Data During I/O Trap SMI

I/O Offset 59-58 – I/O Trap PCI I/O Address.....RO

15-0 PCI Address During I/O Trap SMI

I/O Offset 5A – I/O Trap PCI Command / Byte Enable RO

7-4 PCI Command Type During I/O Trap SMI
3-0 PCI Byte Enable During I/O Trap SMI

I/O Offset 5C – CPU Performance (CE Only) .....RO

7-1 Reserved .....always reads 0

0 Lower CPU Frequency During C3 / S1
This bit controls whether the CPU frequency is lowered when in C3/S1 state. The frequency is lowered using the GHI# signal (PMIO RxE5[3] must be 0 to enable the frequency change function).
- 0 Disable (normal frequency during C3/S1)...def
- 1 Enable (lower frequency during C3/S1)

System Management Bus I/O-Space Registers

The base address for these registers is defined in RxD1-D0 of the Device 17 Function 0 PCI configuration registers. The System Management Bus I/O space is enabled for access by the system if Device 17 Function 0 RxD2[0] = 1.

I/O Offset 00 – SMBus Host Status.....RWC

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6 SMB Semaphore.....RWC
This bit is used as a semaphore among various independent software threads that may need to use the Host SMBus logic and has no effect on hardware. After reset, this bit reads 0. Writing 1 to this bit causes the next read to return 0, then all reads after that return 1. Writing 0 to this bit has no effect. Software can therefore write 1 to request control and if readback is 0 then it will own usage of the host controller.

5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Failed Bus Transaction.....RWC
- 0 SMBus interrupt not caused by failed bus transaction ..... default
- 1 SMBus interrupt caused by failed bus transaction. This bit may be set when the KILL bit (I/O Rx02[1]) is set and can be cleared by writing a 1 to this bit position.

3 Bus Collision.....RWC
- 0 SMBus interrupt not caused by transaction collision ..... default
- 1 SMBus interrupt caused by transaction collision. This bit is only set by hardware and can be cleared by writing a 1 to this bit position.

2 Device Error.....RWC
- 0 SMBus interrupt not caused by generation of an SMBus transaction error ..... default
- 1 SMBus interrupt caused by generation of an SMBus transaction error (illegal command field, unclaimed host-initiated cycle, or host device timeout). This bit is only set by hardware and can be cleared by writing a 1 to this bit position.

1 SMBus Interrupt.....RWC
- 0 SMBus interrupt not caused by host command completion ..... default
- 1 SMBus interrupt caused by host command completion. This bit is only set by hardware and can be cleared by writing a 1 to this bit position.

0 Host Busy ..... RO
- 0 SMBus controller host interface is not processing a command ..... default
- 1 SMBus host controller is busy processing a command. None of the other SMBus registers should be accessed if this bit is set.

I/O Offset 01h – SMBus Slave Status..... RWC

7-6 Reserved ..... always reads 0

5 Alert Status ..... RWC
- 0 SMBus interrupt not caused by SMBALERT# signal ..... default
- 1 SMBus interrupt caused by SMBALERT# signal. This bit will be set only if the Alert Enable bit is set in the SMBus Slave Control Register at I/O Offset R08[3]. This bit is only set by hardware and can be cleared by writing a 1 to this bit position.

4 Shadow 2 Status..... RWC
- 0 SMBus interrupt not caused by address match to SMBus Shadow Address Port 2..... default
- 1 SMBus interrupt or resume event caused by slave cycle address match to SMBus Shadow Address Port 2. This bit is only set by hardware and can be cleared by writing a 1 to this bit position.

3 Shadow 1 Status..... RWC
- 0 SMBus interrupt not caused by address match to SMBus Shadow Address Port 1..... default
- 1 SMBus interrupt or resume event caused by slave cycle address match to SMBus Shadow Address Port 1. This bit is only set by hardware and can be cleared by writing a 1 to this bit position.

2 Slave Status ..... RWC
- 0 SMBus interrupt not caused by slave event match ..... default
- 1 SMBus interrupt or resume event caused by slave cycle event match of the SMBus Slave Command Register at PCI Function 4 Configuration Offset D3h (command match) and the SMBus Slave Event Register at SMBus Base + Offset 0Ah (data event match). This bit is only set by hardware and can be cleared by writing a 1 to this bit position.

1 Reserved ..... always reads 0

0 Slave Busy ..... RO
- 0 SMBus controller slave interface is not processing data ..... default
- 1 SMBus controller slave interface is busy receiving data. None of the other SMBus registers should be accessed if this bit is set.

I/O Offset 02h – SMBus Host Control.....RW

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6 Start ..... always reads 0

0 Writing 0 has no effect ..... default

1 Start Execution of Command
Writing a 1 to this bit causes the SMBus controller host interface to initiate execution of the command programmed in the SMBus Command Protocol field (bits 4-2). All necessary registers should be programmed prior to writing a 1 to this bit. The Host Busy bit (SMBus Host Status Register bit-0) can be used to identify when the SMBus controller has completed command execution.

5-2 SMBus Command Protocol
Selects the type of command the SMBus host controller will execute. Reads or Writes are determined by Rx04[0].

0000 Quick default
0001 Byte
0010 Byte Data
0011 Word Data
0100 Process Call
0101 Block
0110 I2C with 10-bit Address
0111 -reserved-
10xx -reserved-
1100 I2C Process Call
1101 I2C Block
1110 I2C with 7-bit Address
1111 Universal

1 Kill Transaction in Progress

0 Normal host controller operation..... default

1 Stop host transaction currently in progress.
Setting this bit also sets the FAILED status bit (Host Status bit-4) and asserts the interrupt selected by the SMB Interrupt Select bit (Function 4 SMBus Host Configuration Register RxD2[3]).

0 Interrupt Enable

0 Disable interrupt generation ..... default

1 Enable generation of interrupts on completion of the current host transaction.

I/O Offset 03h – SMBus Host Command..... RW

7-0 SMBUS Host Command .....default = 0
This field contains the data transmitted in the command field of the SMBus host transaction.

I/O Offset 04h – SMBus Host Address..... RW

The contents of this register are transmitted in the address field of the SMBus host transaction.

7-1 SMBUS Address .....default = 0
This field contains the 7-bit address of the targeted slave device.

0 SMBUS Read or Write

0 Execute a WRITE command ..... default

1 Execute a READ command

I/O Offset 05h – SMBus Host Data 0 ..... RW

The contents of this register are transmitted in the Data 0 field of SMBus host transaction writes. On reads, Data 0 bytes are stored here.

7-0 SMBUS Data 0 .....default = 0
For Block Write commands, this field is programmed with the block transfer count (a value between 1 and 32). Counts of 0 or greater than 32 are undefined. For Block Read commands, the count received from the SMBus device is stored here.

I/O Offset 06h – SMBus Host Data 1 ..... RW

The contents of this register are transmitted in the Data 1 field of SMBus host transaction writes. On reads, Data 1 bytes are stored here.

7-0 SMBUS Data 1 .....default = 0

I/O Offset 07h – SMBus Block Data..... RW

Reads and writes to this register are used to access the 32-byte block data storage array. An internal index pointer is used to address the array. It is reset to 0 by reads of the SMBus Host Control register (I/O Offset 2) and incremented automatically by each access to this register. The transfer of block data into (read) or out of (write) this storage array during an SMBus transaction always starts at index address 0.

7-0 SMBUS Block Data .....default = 0

I/O Offset 08h – SMBus Slave Control.....RW

7-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3 SMBus Alert Enable

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable generation of an interrupt or resume event on the assertion of the SMBALERT# signal

2 SMBus Shadow Port 2 Enable

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable generation of an interrupt or resume event on external SMBus master generation of a transaction with an address that matches the SMBus Slave Shadow Port 2 register (PCI function 4 configuration register RxD5).

1 SMBus Shadow Port 1 Enable

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable generation of an interrupt or resume event on external SMBus master generation of a transaction with an address that matches the SMBus Slave Shadow Port 1 register (PCI function 4 configuration register RxD4).

0 SMBus Slave Enable

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable generation of an interrupt or resume event on external SMBus master generation of a transaction with an address that matches the SMBus host controller slave port of 10h, a command field which matches the SMBus Slave Command register (PCI function 4 configuration register RxD3), and a match of one of the corresponding enabled events in the SMBus Slave Event Register (I/O Offset 0Ah).

I/O Offset 09h – SMBus Shadow Command..... RO

This register is used to store command values for external SMBus master accesses to the host slave and slave shadow ports.

7-0 Shadow Command ..... default = 0

This field contains the command value which was received during an external SMBus master access whose address field matched the host slave address (10h) or one of the slave shadow port addresses.

I/O Offset 0B-0Ah – SMBus Slave Event..... RW

This register is used to enable generation of interrupt or resume events for accesses to the host controller's slave port.

15-0 SMBus Slave Event .....default = 0

This field contains data bits used to compare against incoming data to the SMBus Slave Data Register (I/O Offset 0Ch). When a bit in this register is set and the corresponding bit the Slave Data register is also set, an interrupt or resume event will be generated if the command value matches the value in the SMBus Slave Command register and the access was to SMBus host address 10h.

I/O Offset 0D-0Ch – SMBus Slave Data ..... RO

This register is used to store data values for external SMBus master accesses to the shadow ports or the SMBus host controller's slave port.

15-0 SMBus Slave Data .....default = 0

This field contains the data value which was transmitted during an external SMBus master access whose address field matched one of the slave shadow port addresses or the SMBus host controller slave port address of 10h.

Device 17 Function 1 Registers - Enhanced IDE Controller

This Enhanced IDE controller interface is fully compatible with the SFF 8038i v.1.0 specification. There are two sets of software accessible registers -- PCI configuration registers and Bus Master IDE I/O registers. The PCI configuration registers are located in the function 1 PCI configuration space of the VT8233. The Bus Master IDE I/O registers are defined in the SFF8038i v1.0 specification.

PCI Configuration Space Header

Offset 1-0 - Vendor ID (1106h=VIA) ..... RO

Offset 3-2 - Device ID (0571h=IDE Controller) ..... RO

Offset 5-4 – Command (0000h) .....RW

15-3 Reserved ..... always reads 0
2 Bus Master ..... default = 0 (disabled)
S/G operation can be issued only when the "Bus Master" bit is enabled.
1 Reserved ..... always reads 0
0 I/O Space ..... default = 0 (disabled)
When the "I/O Space" bit is disabled, the device will not respond to any I/O addresses for both compatible and native mode.

Offset 7-6 – Status (0290h)..... RO

15 Detected Parity Error ..... fixed at 0
14 Signalled System Error..... fixed at 0
13 Received Master Abort..... fixed at 0
12 Received Target Abort..... fixed at 0
11 Signalled Target Abort ..... fixed at 0
10-9 DEVSEL# Timing ..... **always reads 01** (medium)
8 Data Parity Detected..... fixed at 0
7 Fast Back to Back..... fixed at 1
6-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0
4 Capability List..... fixed at 1
3-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 8 - Revision ID (06) ..... RO

7-0 Revision Code for IDE Controller Logic Block

Offset 9 - Programming Interface ..... RW

7 Master IDE Capability..... fixed at 1 (Supported)
6-4 Reserved .....always reads 0
3 Programmable Indicator - Secondary ..... fixed at 1
2 CD: Reserved.....always reads 0
2 CE: Channel Operating Mode - Secondary
0 Compatibility Mode..... default
1 Native Mode
1 Programmable Indicator - Primary..... fixed at 1
0 CD: Reserved.....always reads 0
0 CE: Channel Operating Mode - Primary
0 Compatibility Mode..... default
1 Native Mode

Compatibility Mode (fixed IRQs and I/O addresses):

Channel	Command Block Registers	Control Block Registers	IRQ
Pri	1F0-1F7	3F6	14
Sec	170-177	376	15

Native PCI Mode (registers are programmable in I/O space)

Channel	Command Block Registers	Control Block Registers
Pri	BA @offset 10h	BA @offset 14h
Sec	BA @offset 18h	BA @offset 1Ch

Command register blocks are 8 bytes of I/O space
Control registers are 4 bytes of I/O space (only byte 2 is used)

Offset A - Sub Class Code (01h=IDE Controller) ..... RO

Offset B - Base Class Code (01h=Mass Storage Ctrlr) ... RO

Offset 13-10 - Pri Data / Command Base Address.....RW

Specifies an 8 byte I/O address space.

31-16 Reserved .....always read 0
15-3 Port Address.....default=01F0h
2-0 Fixed at 001b ..... fixed

Offset 17-14 - Pri Control / Status Base Address.....RW

Specifies a 4 byte I/O address space of which only the third byte is active (i.e., 3F6h for the default base address of 3F4h).

31-16 Reserved .....always read 0
15-2 Port Address.....default=03F4h
1-0 Fixed at 01b ..... fixed

Offset 1B-18 - Sec Data / Command Base Address .....RW

Specifies an 8 byte I/O address space.

31-16 Reserved .....always read 0
15-3 Port Address ..... default=0170h
2-0 Fixed at 001b ..... fixed

Offset 1F-1C - Sec Control / Status Base Address.....RW

Specifies a 4 byte I/O address space of which only the third byte is active (i.e., 376h for the default base address of 374h).

31-16 Reserved .....always read 0
15-2 Port Address ..... default=0374h
1-0 Fixed at 01b ..... fixed

Offset 23-20 - Bus Master Control Regs Base Address ..RW

Specifies a 16 byte I/O address space compliant with the **SFF-8038**i **rev 1.0** specification.

31-16 Reserved .....always read 0
15-4 Port Address ..... default=CC0h
3-0 Fixed at 0001b ..... fixed

See Rx42[7-6] for Native / Compatibility mode select for the above registers

Offset 2D-2C – Sub Vendor ID (0000h) ..... RO

The readback value may be changed by writing to RxD5-D4.

Offset 2F-2E – Sub Device ID (0000h) ..... RO

The readback value may be changed by writing to RxD7-D6.

Offset 34 - Capability Pointer (C0h) ..... RO

Offset 3C - Interrupt Line (0Eh) ..... RO

7-4 Reserved ..... always read 0
3-0 IDE Interrupt Routing (for native mode)
0000 Disable
0001 IRQ1
0010 IRQ2
… …
1101 IRQ13
1110 IRQ14 ..... default
1111 IRQ15
APIC (See Device 17 Function 0 Rx4D[7])
x000 IRQ16
x001 IRQ17
x010 IRQ18
… …
x111 IRQ23

Offset 3D - Interrupt Pin (00h) ..... RO

7-0 Interrupt Routing Mode
00h Legacy mode interrupt routing ..... default
01h Native mode interrupt routing

Offset 3E - Minimum Grant (00h)..... RO

Offset 3F - Maximum Latency (00h)..... RO

IDE-Controller-Specific Confiiguration Registers

Offset 40 - Chip Enable.....RW

7-2 Reserved ..... always reads 0

1 Primary Channel
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

0 Secondary Channel
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

Offset 41 - IDE Configuration I .....RW

7 Primary IDE Read Prefetch Buffer
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

6 Primary IDE Post Write Buffer
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

5 Secondary IDE Read Prefetch Buffer
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

4 Secondary IDE Post Write Buffer
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

3-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 42 - IDE Configuration II.....RW

7 PIO Operating Mode - Primary Channel
Selects the mode used in the primary channel for the I/O Base Address (not IRQ routing or sharing)
- 0 Compatibility Mode (fixed addressing). default
- 1 Native PCI Mode (flexible addressing)

6 PIO Operating Mode - Secondary Channel
Selects the mode used in the secondary channel for the I/O Base Address (not IRQ routing or sharing)
- 0 Compatibility Mode (fixed addressing). default
- 1 Native PCI Mode (flexible addressing)

5-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 43 - FIFO Configuration..... RW

7-4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3-2 Primary Channel FIFO Threshold
Determines the threshold required before the primary channel FIFO is flushed.
- 00 FIFO flushed when 1/4 full
- 01 FIFO flushed when 1/2 full
- 10 FIFO flushed when 3/4 full..... default
- 11 FIFO flushed when completely full (32 DWs)

1-0 Secondary Channel FIFO Threshold
Determines the threshold required before the secondary channel FIFO is flushed.
- 00 FIFO flushed when 1/4 full
- 01 FIFO flushed when 1/2 full
- 10 FIFO flushed when 3/4 full..... default
- 11 FIFO flushed when completely full (32 DWs)

Offset 44 - Miscellaneous Control 1 .....RW

7-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 PIO Read Pre-Fetch Byte Counter
Determines whether the amount of data prefetched under PIO read is limited.
- 0 Disable (no limit) ..... default
- 1 Enable. The maximum number of bytes that can be prefetched is determined by Rx61-60[11:0] for the primary channel and Rx69-68[11:0] for the secondary channel.

3 Bus Master IDE Status Register Read Retry
Determines whether a read to the bus master IDE status register is retried when DMA operation is not complete.
- 0 Disable. Reads will return status even if DMA operation is not complete.
- 1 Enable. Reads of the status register are automatically retried while DMA operation is not complete. **.....default**

2 Packet Command Prefetching
Determines whether prefetching is enabled for packet commands. Packet commands are commands for ATAPI, which is used for operating devices such as CD-ROM drives.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

1 Reserved ..... always reads 0

0 UltraDMA Host Must Wait for First Transfer Before Termination
- 0 Enable. The UltraDMA host must wait until at least the first transfer is completed before it can terminate a transaction. ..... default
- 1 Disable

Offset 45 - Miscellaneous Control 2 ..... RW

7 Reserved .....always reads 0

6 Interrupt Steering Swap
Controls whether primary and secondary channel interrupts are swapped.
- 0 Primary channel interrupt is steered to IRQ14, Secondary channel is steered to IRQ15 . default
- 1 Primary channel interrupt is steered to IRQ15, Secondary channel interrupt steered to IRQ14

5 Reserved .....always reads 1

4 Rx3C Write Protect
- 0 Disable (writes to Rx3C are allowed).... default
- 1 Enable (writes to Rx3C are ignored). Under Native Mode (Rx9[2]=1 or Rx9[0]=1) Rx3C should not be write protected as it is used to route IRQ lines.

3 "Memory-Read-Multiple" Command
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

2 "Memory-Write-and-Invalidate" Command
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

1-0 Reserved .....always reads 0

Offset 46 - Miscellaneous Control 3 ..... RW

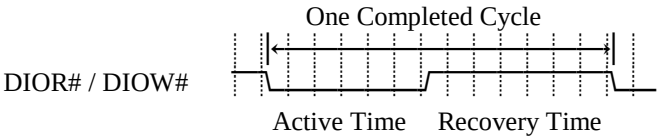
7 Primary Channel Read DMA FIFO Flush
- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable. The primary channel DMA FIFO is flushed when an interrupt request is generated .....default

6 Secondary Channel Read DMA FIFO Flush
- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable. The secondary channel DMA FIFO is flushed when an interrupt request is generated .....default

5-0 Reserved .....always reads 0

Offset 4B-48 - Drive Timing Control.....RW

The following fields define the Active Pulse Width and Recovery Time for the IDE DIOR# and DIOW# signals when accessing the data ports (1F0 and 170):



31-28 Primary Drive 0 Active Pulse Width ..... def=1010b
27-24 Primary Drive 0 Recovery Time ..... def=1000b
23-20 Primary Drive 1 Active Pulse Width ..... def=1010b
19-16 Primary Drive 1 Recovery Time ..... def=1000b
15-12 Secondary Drive 0 Active Pulse Width .. def=1010b
11-8 Secondary Drive 0 Recovery Time ..... def=1000b
7-4 Secondary Drive 1 Active Pulse Width .. def=1010b
3-0 Secondary Drive 1 Recovery Time ..... def=1000b

The actual value for each field is the encoded value in the field plus one and indicates the number of PCI clocks. For example, if the value in the field is 1010b (10 decimal), the active pulse width or recovery time is 11 PCI clocks.

Offset 4C - Address Setup Time.....RW

The following fields define the Address Setup Time. The Address Setup Time is measured from the point when address signals are stable to the point when DIOR# and DIOW# are asserted. The IDE specification requires the setup time to not exceed 1T. However, the VT8233 provides flexibility for devices that may not be able to meet the 1T requirement.

7-6 Primary Drive 0 Address Setup Time
5-4 Primary Drive 1 Address Setup Time
3-2 Secondary Drive 0 Address Setup Time
1-0 Secondary Drive 1 Address Setup Time

For each field above:
00 1T
01 2T
10 3T
11 4T ..... default

Offset 4E – Sec Non-1F0 Port Access Timing (CE Only)RW

7-4 DIOR# / DIOW# Active Pulse Width.....def = 0Bh
3-0 DIOR# / DIOW# Recovery Time..... def = 06h

Offset 4F – Pri Non-1F0 Port Access Timing (CE Only)RW

7-4 DIOR# / DIOW# Active Pulse Width.....def = 0Bh
3-0 DIOR# / DIOW# Recovery Time..... def = 06h

The above fields define the primary and secondary channel DIOR# and DIOW# active pulse widths and recovery times when accessing non-data ports. The times are defined in terms of PCI clocks and the actual value is equal to the value encoded in the field plus one.

Offset 53-50 - UltraDMA Extended Timing Control..... RW

31 Pri Drive 0 UltraDMA-Mode Enable Method
0 Enable by using "Set Feature" command .... def
1 Enable by setting bit-30 of this register

30 Pri Drive 0 UltraDMA-Mode Enable
0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable UltraDMA-Mode Operation

29 Pri Drive 0 Transfer Mode
0 DMA or PIO Mode ..... default
1 UltraDMA Mode

28 Pri Drive 0 Cable Type Reporting
0 40-pin cable is being used..... default
1 80-pin cable is being used

27-24 Pri Drive 0 Cycle Time (T = 10 ns for 100 MHz)
0000 2T
0001 3T
0010 4T
0011 5T
0100 6T
0101 7T
0110 8T
0111 9T ..... default
1000 10T (CE)
1001 11T (CE)
1010 12T (CE)
1011 13T (CE)
1100 14T (CE)
1101 15T (CE)
1110 16T (CE)
1111 17T (CE)

23 Pri Drive 1 UltraDMA-Mode Enable Method
22 Pri Drive 1 UltraDMA-Mode Enable
21 Pri Drive 1 Transfer Mode
20 Pri Drive 1 Cable Type Reporting
0 40-pin cable is being used..... default
1 80-pin cable is being used
19-16 Pri Drive 1 Cycle Time

15 Sec Drive 0 UltraDMA-Mode Enable Method
14 Sec Drive 0 UltraDMA-Mode Enable
13 Sec Drive 0 Transfer Mode
12 Sec Drive 0 Cable Type Reporting
0 40-pin cable is being used..... default
1 80-pin cable is being used
11-8 Sec Drive 0 Cycle Time

7 Sec Drive 1 UltraDMA-Mode Enable Method
6 Sec Drive 1 UltraDMA-Mode Enable
5 Sec Drive 1 Transfer Mode
4 Sec Drive 1 Cable Type Reporting
0 40-pin cable is being used..... default
1 80-pin cable is being used
3-0 Sec Drive 1 Cycle Time

Each byte defines UltraDMA operation for the indicated drive. The bit definitions are the same within each byte.

Offset 54 – UltraDMA FIFO Control (04h) .....RW

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6-3 CD: Reserved..... always reads 0

6 CE: Lower ISA Request Priority When Write Device Packet Command is Issued

The IDE secondary channel shares a bus internally with the ISA interface. When this bit is enabled, the IDE secondary channel is given higher priority over ISA, which results in better performance.

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable

5 CE: Clear Native Mode Interrupt on Falling Edge of Gated Interrupt

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable. The interrupt will be automatically cleared on the falling edge of the gated interrupt.

4 CE: Improve PIO Prefetch and Post-Write Performance

0 Enable. PIO prefetch and post write performance is increased by being given higher throughput. ..... default

1 Disable

3 CE: Memory Prefetch Size

This bit determines how many lines are prefetched from memory for IDE transactions.

0 Prefetch 1 line ..... default

1 Prefetch 2 lines (16 DoubleWords). This setting improves ATA100 throughput.

2 Change Drive Clears All FIFO & Internal States

0 Disable

1 Command switch from one drive to another drive in the same channel terminates all previous outstanding transactions involving the previous drive. **.....default**

1 Reserved ..... always reads 0

0 Complete DMA Cycle with Transfer Size Less Than FIFO Size

0 Enable. DMA transfer size is less than the FIFO size..... default

1 Disable

Offset 61-60 - Primary Sector Size.....RW

15-12 Reserved ..... always reads 0

11-0 Number of Bytes Per Sector... def=200h (512 bytes)

This field determines the maximum number of bytes that can be prefetched when Rx44[4] = 1.

Offset 69-68 - Secondary Sector Size .....RW

15-12 Reserved ..... always reads 0

11-0 Number of Bytes Per Sector... def=200h (512 bytes)

This field determines the maximum number of bytes that can be prefetched when Rx44[4] = 1.

Offset 70 – Primary IDE Status.....RO

7 Interrupt Status .....RO

1 Primary channel interrupt request pending

6 Prefetch Buffer Status.....RO

1 PIO Prefetch transaction in progress

5 Post Write Buffer Status.....RO

1 PIO Post Write transaction in progress

4 DMA Read Prefetch Status.....RO

1 DMA Read Prefetch transaction in progress

3 DMA Write Pipeline Status .....RO

1 DMA Write transaction in progress

2 S/G Operation Complete.....RO

1 Scatter / Gather operation complete

1 FIFO Empty Status .....RO

1 Primary Channel FIFO empty

0 Response to External DMA Request.....RO

1 External pri channel DMA request pending

Offset 71 – Primary Interrupt Control (01h) ..... RW

7-1 Reserved .....always reads 0

0 Interrupt Gating

0 Disable

1 Enable (IRQ output gated until FIFO empty)

..... default

Offset 78 – Secondary IDE Status .....RO

7 Interrupt Status .....RO

1 Secondary channel interrupt request pending

6 Prefetch Buffer Status.....RO

1 PIO Prefetch transaction in progress

5 Post Write Buffer Status.....RO

1 PIO Post Write transaction in progress

4 DMA Read Prefetch Status.....RO

1 DMA Read Prefetch transaction in progress

3 DMA Write Pipeline Status .....RO

1 DMA Write transaction in progress

2 S/G Operation Complete.....RO

1 Scatter / Gather operation complete

1 FIFO Empty Status .....RO

1 Secondary Channel FIFO empty

0 Response to External DMA Request.....RO

1 External sec channel DMA request pending

Offset 79 - Secondary Interrupt Control (01h) ..... RW

7-1 Reserved .....always reads 0

0 Interrupt Gating

0 Disable

1 Enable (IRQ output gated until FIFO empty)

..... default

Offset 83-80 – Primary S/G Descriptor Address.....RO

Offset 8B-88 – Secondary S/G Descriptor Address.....RO

These registers are used for debugging purposes only.

IDE Power Management Registers

Offset C3-C0 – Power Management Capabilities..... RO

31-0 PCI PM Block 1..... always reads 0002 0001h
This field reports support details for Power Management Capabilities according to the PCI Power Management specification.

Offset C7-C4 – Power State..... RO

31-2 Reserved ..... always reads 0
1-0 Power State
00 D0 ..... default
01 -reserved-
10 -reserved-
11 D3 Hot

IDE Back Door Registers

Offset D0 – Back Door – Revision ID (06h).....RW

Offset D3-D2 – Back Door – Device ID (0571h).....RW

Offset D5-D4 – Back Door – Sub-Vendor ID (0000h) ....RW

Offset D7-D6 – Back Door – Sub-Device ID (0000h).....RW

IDE I/O Registers

These registers are compliant with the SFF 8038I v1.0 standard. Refer to the SFF 8038I v1.0 specification for further details.

I/O Offset 0 - Primary Channel Command

I/O Offset 2 - Primary Channel Status

I/O Offset 4-7 - Primary Channel PRD Table Address

I/O Offset 8 - Secondary Channel Command

I/O Offset A - Secondary Channel Status

I/O Offset C-F - Secondary Channel PRD Table Address

Device 17 Function 2 Registers - USB Controller Ports 0-1

This Universal Serial Bus host controller interface is fully compatible with UHCI specification v1.1. There are two sets of software accessible registers: PCI configuration registers and USB I/O registers. The PCI configuration registers are located in the function 2 PCI configuration space of the VT8233. The USB I/O registers are defined in UHCI specification v1.1. The registers in this function control USB ports 0-1 (see function 3 for ports 2-3 and function 4 for ports 4-5).

PCI Configuration Space Header

Offset 1-0 - Vendor ID ..... RO

7-0 Vendor ID ..... (1106h = VIA Technologies)

Offset 3-2 - Device ID ..... RO

7-0 Device ID (3038h = VT8233 USB Controller)

Offset 5-4 - Command ..... RW

15-8 Reserved ..... always reads 0
7 Reserved (address stepping)..... fixed at 0
6 Reserved (parity error response) ..... fixed at 0
5 Reserved (VGA palette snoop) ..... fixed at 0
4 Reserved (memory write and invalidate) .... fixed at 0
3 Reserved (special cycle monitoring) ..... fixed at 0
2 Bus Master .....CE: fixed at 0, CD: def=0 (disabled)
1 Memory Space ..CE: fixed at 0, CD: def=0 (disabled)
0 I/O Space ..... default=0 (disabled)

Offset 7-6 - Status ..... RWC

15 Reserved (detected parity error)..... always reads 0
14 Signalled System Error..... default=0
13 Received Master Abort..... default=0
12 Received Target Abort..... default=0
11 Signalled Target Abort ..... default=0
10-9 DEVSEL# Timing
00 Fast
01 Medium .....default (fixed)
10 Slow
11 Reserved
8-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 8 - Revision ID (nnh) ..... RO

7-0 Silicon Revision Code (0 indicates first silicon)
06h Corresponds to Chip Revision D

Offset 9 - Programming Interface (00h) ..... RO

Offset A - Sub Class Code (03h=USB Controller) ..... RO

Offset B - Base Class Code (0Ch=Serial Bus Controller) RO

Offset 23-20 - USB I/O Register Base Address ..... RW

31-16 Reserved .....always reads 0
15-5 USB I/O Register Base Address. Port Address for the base of the 32-byte USB I/O Register block, corresponding to AD[15:5]
4-0 00001b

Offset 2D-2C – Sub Vendor ID (0000h) ..... RO

Offset 2F-2E – Sub Device ID (0000h) ..... RO

Offset 3C - Interrupt Line (00h) ..... RW

7-4 Reserved .....always reads 0
3-0 USB Interrupt Routing
0000 Disabled..... default
0001 IRQ1
0010 Reserved
0011 IRQ3
0100 IRQ4
0101 IRQ5
0110 IRQ6
0111 IRQ7
1000 IRQ8
1001 IRQ9
1010 IRQ10
1011 IRQ11
1100 IRQ12
1101 IRQ13
1110 IRQ14
1111 Disabled
APIC (See Device 17 Function 0 Rx4D[7])
x000 IRQ16
x001 IRQ17
x010 IRQ18
… …
x111 IRQ23

Offset 3D - Interrupt Pin (04h) ..... RO

7-0 Interrupt Pin.....always reads 04h to indicate INTD#

USB-Specific Configuration Registers

Offset 40 - Miscellaneous Control 1 ..... RW

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6 Babble Option

This bit controls whether the port is disabled when EOF (End-Of-Frame) babble occurs. Babble is unexpected bus activity that persists into the EOF interval. When this bit is 0, the port with the EOF babble is disabled. When it is 1, it is not disabled

0 Automatically disable babbled port when EOF babble occurs..... default

1 Don't disable babbled port

5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

3 USB Data Length Option

0 Support TD length up to 1280..... default

1 Support TD length up to 1023

(TD = Transfer Descriptor)

2 Reserved ..... always reads 0

1 DMA Option

0 Enhanced performance (8 DW burst access with better FIFO latency) ..... default

1 Normal performance (16 DW burst access with normal FIFO latency)

0 PCI Wait States

0 Zero Wait States..... default

1 One Wait State

Offset 41 - Miscellaneous Control 2 ..... RW

7 USB 1.1 Improvement for EOP

This bit controls whether USB Specification 1.1 or 1.0 is followed when a stuffing error occurs before an EOP (End-Of-Packet). A stuffing error results when the receiver sees seven consecutive ones in a packet. Under USB specification 1.1, when this occurs in the interval just before an EOP, the receiver will accept the packet. Under USB specification 1.0, the packet is ignored.

0 USB Spec 1.1 Compliant (packet accepted) def

1 USB Spec 1.0 Compliant (packet ignored)

6-3 Reserved (Do Not Program) .....default = 0

2 Trap Option

Under the UHCI spec, port 60 / 64 is trapped only when its corresponding enable bits are set. When this bit is set, trap can be set without checking the enable bits.

0 Set trap 60/64 status bits only when trap 60/64 enable bits are set.....default

1 Set trap 60/64 status bits without checking enable bits

1 A20Gate Pass Through Option

This bit controls whether the A20Gate pass-through sequence (as defined in UHCI) is followed. The A20Gate sequence consists of 4 commands. When this bit is 0, the 4-command sequence is followed. When this bit is 1, the last command (write FFh to port 64) is skipped.

0 A20GATE Pass-through command sequence as defined in UHCI .....default

1 Last command skipped

0 Reserved .....always reads 0

Offset 48 - Miscellaneous Control 3 (CE Only) .....RW

7-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3-2 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

1 Lengthen PreSOF Time

The preSOF time point determines whether there is enough timein the remaining frame period to perform a 64-byte transaction. It prevents a packet that may not fit in the remaining frame period from being initiated. This bit controls whether the preSOF time point is moved back so that the preSOF time is lengthened.

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable (PreSOF time lengthened)

0 Issue Nonzero Bad CRC Code on FIFO Underrun

A FIFO underrun occurs when there is no data in the FIFO to supply data transmission. When this occurs, the south bridge invalidates the data by sending an incorrect CRC code to the device. This bit controls the type of incorrect CRC sent.

0 Non zero CRC (recommended)..... default

1 All zero CRC

This option isn't really needed any more as non-zero CRC always works.

Offset 49 – MIA Analog Control (CE Only) .....RW

7-3 Reserved ..... always reads 0

2 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

1-0 Port Slew Rate Control

This field controls the slew rate of signals from the port. The voltage values are Pn+ and Pn– crossover-point voltages. The different crossover points are generated by controlling the rising edge of both Pn+ and Pn– signals.

00 1.50V ..... default

01 1.65V

10 1.80V

11 1.95V

Offset 60 - Serial Bus Release Number..... RO

7-0 Release Number ..... always reads 10h

Offset 83-80 – PM Capability..... RO

31-0 PM Capability ..... always reads 00020001h

Offset 84 – PM Capability Status.....RW

7-0 PM Capability Status

00 D0 ..... default

11 D3 Hot

Offset C1-C0 - Legacy Support..... RO

15-0 UHCI v1.1 Compliant..... always reads 2000h

USB I/O Registers

These registers are compliant with the UHCI v1.1 standard. Refer to the UHCI v1.1 specification for further details.

I/O Offset 1-0 - USB Command

I/O Offset 3-2 - USB Status

I/O Offset 5-4 - USB Interrupt Enable

I/O Offset 7-6 - Frame Number

I/O Offset B-8 - Frame List Base Address

I/O Offset 0C - Start Of Frame Modify

I/O Offset 11-10 - Port 0 Status / Control

I/O Offset 13-12 - Port 1 Status / Control

Device 17 Function 3 Registers - USB Controller Ports 2-3

This Universal Serial Bus host controller interface is fully compatible with UHCI specification v1.1. There are two sets of software accessible registers: PCI configuration registers and USB I/O registers. The PCI configuration registers are located in the function 3 PCI configuration space of the VT8233. The USB I/O registers are defined in UHCI specification v1.1. The registers in this function control USB ports 2-3 (see function 2 for ports 0-1 and function 4 for ports 4-5).

PCI Configuration Space Header

Offset 1-0 - Vendor ID ..... RO

7-0 Vendor ID ..... (1106h = VIA Technologies)

Offset 3-2 - Device ID ..... RO

7-0 Device ID (3038h = VT8233 USB Controller)

Offset 5-4 - Command ..... RW

15-8 Reserved ..... always reads 0
7 Reserved (address stepping)..... fixed at 0
6 Reserved (parity error response) ..... fixed at 0
5 Reserved (VGA palette snoop) ..... fixed at 0
4 Reserved (memory write and invalidate) .... fixed at 0
3 Reserved (special cycle monitoring) ..... fixed at 0
2 Bus Master .....CE: fixed at 0, CD: def=0 (disabled)
1 Memory Space ..CE: fixed at 0, CD: def=0 (disabled)
0 I/O Space ..... default=0 (disabled)

Offset 7-6 - Status ..... RWC

15 Reserved (detected parity error)..... always reads 0
14 Signalled System Error..... default=0
13 Received Master Abort..... default=0
12 Received Target Abort..... default=0
11 Signalled Target Abort ..... default=0
10-9 DEVSEL# Timing
00 Fast
01 Medium .....default (fixed)
10 Slow
11 Reserved
8-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 8 - Revision ID (nnh) ..... RO

7-0 Silicon Revision Code (0 indicates first silicon)

Offset 9 - Programming Interface (00h) ..... RO

Offset A - Sub Class Code (03h=USB Controller) ..... RO

Offset B - Base Class Code (0Ch=Serial Bus Controller) RO

Offset 23-20 - USB I/O Register Base Address ..... RW

31-16 Reserved .....always reads 0
15-5 USB I/O Register Base Address. Port Address for the base of the 32-byte USB I/O Register block, corresponding to AD[15:5]
4-0 00001b

Offset 2D-2C – Sub Vendor ID (0000h) ..... RO

Offset 2F-2E – Sub Device ID (0000h) ..... RO

Offset 3C - Interrupt Line (00h) ..... RW

7-4 Reserved .....always reads 0
3-0 USB Interrupt Routing .....default = 16h
0000 Disabled..... default
0001 IRQ1
0010 Reserved
0011 IRQ3
0100 IRQ4
0101 IRQ5
0110 IRQ6
0111 IRQ7
1000 IRQ8
1001 IRQ9
1010 IRQ10
1011 IRQ11
1100 IRQ12
1101 IRQ13
1110 IRQ14
1111 Disabled
APIC (See Device 17 Function 0 Rx4D[7])
x000 IRQ16
x001 IRQ17
x010 IRQ18
… …
x111 IRQ23

Offset 3D - Interrupt Pin (04h) ..... RO

7-0 Interrupt Pin .....always reads 04h to indicate INTD#

USB-Specific Configuration Registers

Offset 40 - Miscellaneous Control 1 ..... RW

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6 Babble Option

This bit controls whether the port is disabled when EOF (End-Of-Frame) babble occurs. Babble is unexpected bus activity that persists into the EOF interval. When this bit is 0, the port with the EOF babble is disabled. When it is 1, it is not disabled

0 Automatically disable babbled port when EOF babble occurs..... default

1 Don't disable babbled port

5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

3 USB Data Length Option

0 Support TD length up to 1280..... default

1 Support TD length up to 1023

(TD = Transfer Descriptor)

2 Reserved ..... always reads 0

1 DMA Option

0 Enhanced performance (8 DW burst access with better FIFO latency) ..... default

1 Normal performance (16 DW burst access with normal FIFO latency)

0 PCI Wait States

0 Zero Wait States..... default

1 One Wait State

Offset 41 - Miscellaneous Control 2 ..... RW

7 USB 1.1 Improvement for EOP

This bit controls whether USB Specification 1.1 or 1.0 is followed when a stuffing error occurs before an EOP (End-Of-Packet). A stuffing error results when the receiver sees seven consecutive ones in a packet. Under USB specification 1.1, when this occurs in the interval just before an EOP, the receiver will accept the packet. Under USB specification 1.0, the packet is ignored.

0 USB Spec 1.1 Compliant (packet accepted) def

1 USB Spec 1.0 Compliant (packet ignored)

6-3 Reserved (Do Not Program) .....default = 0

2 Trap Option

Under the UHCI spec, port 60 / 64 is trapped only when its corresponding enable bits are set. When this bit is set, trap can be set without checking the enable bits.

0 Set trap 60/64 status bits only when trap 60/64 enable bits are set.....default

1 Set trap 60/64 status bits without checking enable bits

1 A20Gate Pass Through Option

This bit controls whether the A20Gate pass-through sequence (as defined in UHCI) is followed. The A20Gate sequence consists of 4 commands. When this bit is 0, the 4-command sequence is followed. When this bit is 1, the last command (write FFh to port 64) is skipped.

0 A20GATE Pass-through command sequence as defined in UHCI .....default

1 Last command skipped

0 Reserved .....always reads 0

Offset 48 - Miscellaneous Control 3 (CE Only) .....RW

7-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3-2 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

1 Lengthen PreSOF Time

The preSOF time point determines whether there is enough timein the remaining frame period to perform a 64-byte transaction. It prevents a packet that may not fit in the remaining frame period from being initiated. This bit controls whether the preSOF time point is moved back so that the preSOF time is lengthened.

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable (PreSOF time lengthened)

0 Issue Nonzero Bad CRC Code on FIFO Underrun

A FIFO underrun occurs when there is no data in the FIFO to supply data transmission. When this occurs, the south bridge invalidates the data by sending an incorrect CRC code to the device. This bit controls the type of incorrect CRC sent.

0 Non zero CRC (recommended)..... default

1 All zero CRC

This option isn't really needed any more as non-zero CRC always works.

Offset 49 – MIA Analog Control (CE Only) .....RW

7-3 Reserved ..... always reads 0

2 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

1-0 Port Slew Rate Control

This field controls the slew rate of signals from the port. The voltage values are Pn+ and Pn– crossover-point voltages. The different crossover points are generated by controlling the rising edge of both Pn+ and Pn– signals.

00 1.50V ..... default

01 1.65V

10 1.80V

11 1.95V

Offset 60 - Serial Bus Release Number..... RO

7-0 Release Number ..... always reads 10h

Offset 83-80 – PM Capability..... RO

31-0 PM Capability ..... always reads 00020001h

Offset 84 – PM Capability Status.....RW

7-0 PM Capability Status

00 D0 ..... default

11 D3 Hot

Offset C1-C0 - Legacy Support..... RO

15-0 UHCI v1.1 Compliant..... always reads 2000h

USB I/O Registers

These registers are compliant with the UHCI v1.1 standard. Refer to the UHCI v1.1 specification for further details.

I/O Offset 1-0 - USB Command

I/O Offset 3-2 - USB Status

I/O Offset 5-4 - USB Interrupt Enable

I/O Offset 7-6 - Frame Number

I/O Offset B-8 - Frame List Base Address

I/O Offset 0C - Start Of Frame Modify

I/O Offset 11-10 - Port 0 Status / Control

I/O Offset 13-12 - Port 1 Status / Control

Device 17 Function 4 Registers - USB Controller Ports 4-5

This Universal Serial Bus host controller interface is fully compatible with UHCI specification v1.1. There are two sets of software accessible registers: PCI configuration registers and USB I/O registers. The PCI configuration registers are located in the function 4 PCI configuration space of the VT8233. The USB I/O registers are defined in UHCI specification v1.1. The registers in this function control USB ports 4-5 (see function 2 for ports 0-1 and function 3 for ports 2-3).

PCI Configuration Space Header

Offset 1-0 - Vendor ID ..... RO

7-0 Vendor ID ..... (1106h = VIA Technologies)

Offset 3-2 - Device ID ..... RO

7-0 Device ID ..... (3038h = VT8233 USB Controller)

Offset 5-4 - Command ..... RW

15-8 Reserved ..... always reads 0
7 Reserved (address stepping)..... fixed at 0
6 Reserved (parity error response) ..... fixed at 0
5 Reserved (VGA palette snoop) ..... fixed at 0
4 Reserved (memory write and invalidate) .... fixed at 0
3 Reserved (special cycle monitoring) ..... fixed at 0
2 Bus Master .....CE: fixed at 0, CD: def=0 (disabled)
1 Memory Space ..CE: fixed at 0, CD: def=0 (disabled)
0 I/O Space ..... default=0 (disabled)

Offset 7-6 - Status ..... RWC

15 Reserved (detected parity error)..... always reads 0
14 Signalled System Error..... default=0
13 Received Master Abort..... default=0
12 Received Target Abort..... default=0
11 Signalled Target Abort ..... default=0
10-9 DEVSEL# Timing
00 Fast
01 Medium .....default (fixed)
10 Slow
11 Reserved
8-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 8 - Revision ID (nnh) ..... RO

7-0 Silicon Revision Code (0 indicates first silicon)

Offset 9 - Programming Interface (00h) ..... RO

Offset A - Sub Class Code (03h=USB Controller) ..... RO

Offset B - Base Class Code (0Ch=Serial Bus Controller) RO

Offset 23-20 - USB I/O Register Base Address ..... RW

31-16 Reserved .....always reads 0
15-5 USB I/O Register Base Address. Port Address for the base of the 32-byte USB I/O Register block, corresponding to AD[15:5]
4-0 00001b

Offset 2D-2C – Sub Vendor ID (0000h) ..... RO

Offset 2F-2E – Sub Device ID (0000h) ..... RO

Offset 3C - Interrupt Line (00h) ..... RW

7-4 Reserved .....always reads 0
3-0 USB Interrupt Routing .....default = 16h
0000 Disabled..... default
0001 IRQ1
0010 Reserved
0011 IRQ3
0100 IRQ4
0101 IRQ5
0110 IRQ6
0111 IRQ7
1000 IRQ8
1001 IRQ9
1010 IRQ10
1011 IRQ11
1100 IRQ12
1101 IRQ13
1110 IRQ14
1111 Disabled
APIC (See Device 17 Function 0 Rx4D[7])
x000 IRQ16
x001 IRQ17
x010 IRQ18
… …
x111 IRQ23

Offset 3D - Interrupt Pin (04h) ..... RO

7-0 Interrupt Pin.....always reads 04h to indicate INTD#

USB-Specific Configuration Registers

Offset 40 - Miscellaneous Control 1 ..... RW

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6 Babble Option

This bit controls whether the port is disabled when EOF (End-Of-Frame) babble occurs. Babble is unexpected bus activity that persists into the EOF interval. When this bit is 0, the port with the EOF babble is disabled. When it is 1, it is not disabled

0 Automatically disable babbled port when EOF babble occurs..... default

1 Don't disable babbled port

5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

3 USB Data Length Option

0 Support TD length up to 1280..... default

1 Support TD length up to 1023

(TD = Transfer Descriptor)

2 Reserved ..... always reads 0

1 DMA Option

0 Enhanced performance (8 DW burst access with better FIFO latency) ..... default

1 Normal performance (16 DW burst access with normal FIFO latency)

0 PCI Wait States

0 Zero Wait States..... default

1 One Wait State

Offset 41 - Miscellaneous Control 2 ..... RW

7 USB 1.1 Improvement for EOP

This bit controls whether USB Specification 1.1 or 1.0 is followed when a stuffing error occurs before an EOP (End-Of-Packet). A stuffing error results when the receiver sees seven consecutive ones in a packet. Under USB specification 1.1, when this occurs in the interval just before an EOP, the receiver will accept the packet. Under USB specification 1.0, the packet is ignored.

0 USB Spec 1.1 Compliant (packet accepted) def

1 USB Spec 1.0 Compliant (packet ignored)

6-3 Reserved (Do Not Program) .....default = 0

2 Trap Option

Under the UHCI spec, port 60 / 64 is trapped only when its corresponding enable bits are set. When this bit is set, trap can be set without checking the enable bits.

0 Set trap 60/64 status bits only when trap 60/64 enable bits are set.....default

1 Set trap 60/64 status bits without checking enable bits

1 A20Gate Pass Through Option

This bit controls whether the A20Gate pass-through sequence (as defined in UHCI) is followed. The A20Gate sequence consists of 4 commands. When this bit is 0, the 4-command sequence is followed. When this bit is 1, the last command (write FFh to port 64) is skipped.

0 A20GATE Pass-through command sequence as defined in UHCI .....default

1 Last command skipped

0 Reserved .....always reads 0

Offset 48 - Miscellaneous Control 3 (CE Only) .....RW

7-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3-2 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

1 Lengthen PreSOF Time

The preSOF time point determines whether there is enough timein the remaining frame period to perform a 64-byte transaction. It prevents a packet that may not fit in the remaining frame period from being initiated. This bit controls whether the preSOF time point is moved back so that the preSOF time is lengthened.

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable (PreSOF time lengthened)

0 Issue Nonzero Bad CRC Code on FIFO Underrun

A FIFO underrun occurs when there is no data in the FIFO to supply data transmission. When this occurs, the south bridge invalidates the data by sending an incorrect CRC code to the device. This bit controls the type of incorrect CRC sent.

0 Non zero CRC (recommended)..... default

1 All zero CRC

This option isn't really needed any more as non-zero CRC always works.

Offset 49 – MIA Analog Control (CE Only) .....RW

7-3 Reserved ..... always reads 0

2 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

1-0 Port Slew Rate Control

This field controls the slew rate of signals from the port. The voltage values are Pn+ and Pn– crossover-point voltages. The different crossover points are generated by controlling the rising edge of both Pn+ and Pn– signals.

00 1.50V ..... default

01 1.65V

10 1.80V

11 1.95V

Offset 60 - Serial Bus Release Number..... RO

7-0 Release Number ..... always reads 10h

Offset 83-80 – PM Capability..... RO

31-0 PM Capability ..... always reads 00020001h

Offset 84 – PM Capability Status.....RW

7-0 PM Capability Status

00 D0 ..... default

11 D3 Hot

Offset C1-C0 - Legacy Support..... RO

15-0 UHCI v1.1 Compliant..... always reads 2000h

USB I/O Registers

These registers are compliant with the UHCI v1.1 standard. Refer to the UHCI v1.1 specification for further details.

I/O Offset 1-0 - USB Command

I/O Offset 3-2 - USB Status

I/O Offset 5-4 - USB Interrupt Enable

I/O Offset 7-6 - Frame Number

I/O Offset B-8 - Frame List Base Address

I/O Offset 0C - Start Of Frame Modify

I/O Offset 11-10 - Port 0 Status / Control

I/O Offset 13-12 - Port 1 Status / Control

Device 17 Function 5 Registers - AC97 Audio Controller

The audio controller interface is hardware compatible with AC97. The PCI configuration registers for the audio controller are located in the function 5 PCI configuration space of the VT8233. The I/O registers are located in the system I/O space.

PCI Configuration Space Header

Offset 1-0 - Vendor ID ..... RO

7-0 Vendor ID ..... (1106h = VIA Technologies)

Offset 3-2 - Device ID ..... RO

7-0 Device ID (3059h = VT8233 Audio Controller)

Offset 5-4 - Command .....RW

15-10 Reserved ..... always reads 0
9 Reserved (fast back-to-back)..... fixed at 0
8 SERR# Enable..... fixed at 0
7 Reserved (address stepping)..... fixed at 0
6 Reserved (parity error response) ..... fixed at 0
5 Reserved (VGA palette snoop) ..... fixed at 0
4 Reserved (memory write and invalidate) .... fixed at 0
3 Reserved (special cycle monitoring)..... fixed at 0
2 Bus Master ..... fixed at 0
1 Memory Space..... fixed at 0
0 I/O Space ..... default=0 (disabled)

Offset 7-6 - Status ..... RO

15 Detected Parity Error..... fixed at 0
14 Signalled System Error..... fixed at 0
13 Received Master Abort..... fixed at 0
12 Received Target Abort..... fixed at 0
11 Signalled Target Abort ..... fixed at 0
10-9 DEVSEL# Timing
00 Fast
01 Medium ..... fixed
10 Slow
11 Reserved
8 Data Parity Error..... fixed at 0
7 Fast Back-to-Back Capable..... fixed at 0
6-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0
4 PM 1.1 ..... fixed at 1
3-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 8 - Revision ID (CD=10h, CE=30h) **..... RO**

7-0 Silicon Revision Code

Offset 9 - Programming Interface (00h) **..... RO**

Offset A - Sub Class Code (01h=Audio Device)**..... RO**

Offset B - Base Class Code (04h=Multimedia Device) **..... RO**

Offset 13-10 - Base Address 0 – SGD Control / Status .. RW

31-16 Reserved .....always reads 0
15-8 Base Address.....default = 00h
7-0 00000001b (256 bytes)

Device 0 Offset 2D-2C – Subsystem Vendor ID (0000h)*RO

15-0 Subsystem Vendor ID .....default = 0
*This register is RW if function 5-6 Rx44[4] = 1

Device 0 Offset 2F-2E – Subsystem ID (0000h)..... *RO

15-0 Subsystem ID .....default = 0
*This register is RW if function 5-6 Rx44[4] = 1

Offset 34 – Capture Pointer (C0h) ..... RO

Offset 3C - Interrupt Line..... RW

7-4 Reserved .....always reads 0
3-0 Audio Interrupt Routing
0000 Disabled..... default
0001 IRQ1
0010 Reserved
0011 IRQ3
0100 IRQ4
0101 IRQ5
0110 IRQ6
0111 IRQ7
1000 IRQ8
1001 IRQ9
1010 IRQ10
1011 IRQ11
1100 IRQ12
1101 IRQ13
1110 IRQ14
1111 Disabled
APIC (See Device 17 Function 0 Rx4D[7])
x000 IRQ16
x001 IRQ17
x010 IRQ18
… …
x111 IRQ23

Offset 3D - Interrupt Pin (03h) **..... RO**

Offset 3E - Minimum Grant (00h)**..... RO**

Offset 3F - Maximum Latency (00h) **..... RO**

Audio-Specific PCI Configuration Registers

Offset 40 – AC Link Interface Status ..... RO

7-6 Reserved ..... always reads 0

5 Codec CID=11b Ready Status..... RO
- 0 Codec Not Ready
- 1 Codec Ready (audio ctrlr can access codec)

4 Codec CID=10b Ready Status..... RO
- 0 Codec Not Ready
- 1 Codec Ready (audio ctrlr can access codec)

3 Reserved ..... always reads 0

2 Codec CID=01b Ready Status..... RO
- 0 Codec Not Ready
- 1 Codec Ready (audio ctrlr can access codec)

1 AC97 Low-Power Status ..... RO
- 0 AC97 Codecs not in low-power mode
- 1 AC97 Codecs in low-power mode

This bit reports 1 when Rx26[4] of the codecs is 1. It is used to determine whether the bit-clock should be gated.

0 Codec CID=00b Ready Status..... RO
- 0 Codec Not Ready
- 1 Codec Ready (audio ctrlr can access codec)

Offset 41 – AC Link Interface Control ..... RW

7 AC-Link Interface
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

6 AC-Link Reset

0Assert AC-Link Reset (used for cold reset)..... def

1De-assert AC-Link Reset

5 AC-Link Sync
- 0 Release SYNC ..... default
- 1 Force SYNC High (used for warm reset)

4 AC-Link Serial Data Out
- 0 Release SDO ..... default
- 1 Force SDO High

3 Variable-Sample-Rate On-Demand Mode
- 0 Disable (AC Link sends data every frame).. def
- 1 Enable (AC Link sends data only when there is a request from the codec)

2 3D Audio Channel Slots 3/4
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

Note that slots 7/8 and 6/9 do not have to be selected as they are not muxed with DXS as are slots 3/4)

1-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 42 – Function Enable .....RW

7-6 Reserved ..... always reads 0

5 Function 5 Config Reg Rx2C Writable .....RW

0 Device 17 Function 5 Rx2C-2F RO ..... default

1 Device 17 Function 5 Rx2C-2F RW

4-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 44 – MC97 Interface Control ..... RO

Mapped RO to function 5 (RW in func 6) for status reporting.

7 AC-Link Interface for Slot-5 (Modem) ..... RO

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable

6 Secondary Codec Support ..... RO

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable

5 Function 6 Config Reg Rx9-B Writable ..... RO

0 Device 17 Function 6 Rx9-B RO ..... default

1 Device 17 Function 6 Rx9-B RW

4 Function 6 Config Reg 2Ch Writable..... RO

0 Device 17 Function 6 Rx2C-2F RO ..... default

1 Device 17 Function 6 Rx2C-2F RW

3 Sync ..... RO

This bit reports whether there is activity in function 6 (modem). When function 5 (audio) enters low-power state and wants to gate bit-clock, software needs to check this bit to see whether bit-clock can actually be gated, as function 6 shares the same bit-clock.

0 Function 6 activity in progress that requires bit-clock

1 Function 6 does not need bit-clock so bit-clock can be gated

2-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 48 – Volume Change Rate Control ..... RW

7-4 Volume Change Rate

This field controls the volume change rate in the sample rate converter

0000 Volume Adjust Every Frame (sync cycle)...def

…

1111 Volume Adjust Every 16 Frames (sync cycles)

3 Sync

This bit reports whether there is activity in function 5 (audio). When function 6 (modem) enters low-power state and wants to gate bit-clock, software needs to check this bit to see whether bit-clock can actually be gated, as function 5 shares the same bit-clock.

0 Function 5 activity in progress that requires bit-clock

1 Function 5 does not need bit-clock so bit-clock can be gated

2-0 Reserved ..... **RW**

Offset 49 – S/PDIF Control (CE Only) ..... RW

7-4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3 DX3 (DirectSound) Channel S/PDIF Support

This bit controls whether DirectSound Channel 3 is used as S/PDIF support

0 Disable.....default

1 Enable

2 Reserved .....always reads 0

1-0 S/PDIF Data Slot Select

00 Slot 10/11.....default

01 Slot 3/4

10 Slot 7/8

11 Slot 6/9

Offset C3-C0 – Power Mgmt Capability.....RO

31-0 Power Mgmt Capability....always reads 0002 0001h

Offset C7-C4 – Power State ..... RW

31-2 Reserved .....always reads 0

1-0 Power State (D3 / D0 Only)

I/O Base 0 Regs – Audio Scatter / Gather DMA

DXS Channel 0-3 SGD Registers (x = 0-3)

I/O Offset x0 – DXS Channel x SGD Status.....RWC

7 SGD Active ..... RO
- 0 SGD has completed or been terminated default
- 1 SGD Active

6-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Current SGD Index Equals Stop Index ..... RO
- 0 SGD index not equal to stop index..... default
- 1 SGD index being processed equals the stop index. This bit differs from bit-2 of this register in that this bit becomes 1 as soon as the SGD *reaches* the index equal to the stop index. Bit-2 becomes 1 after the SGD *finishes processing* the index equal to the stop index. So this bit will always turn on before bit-2.

3 SGD Trigger Queued..... RO

This bit reports whether the trigger used to restart the SGD operation is queued (I/O Offset x1[1] = 1 while the SGD engine is running).
- 0 SGD trigger not queued..... default
- 1 SGD trigger queued (when SGD reaches EOL, it will restart).

2 SGD Stop Interrupt Status.....RWC
- 1 SGD finished the index equal to the stop index set in xB-x8[31-24].

1 SGD EOL (End Of Link).....RWC
- 1 Block is the last of the link. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset x1[1] = 1.

0 SGD Flag .....RWC
- 1 Block complete. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset x1[0] = 1.

I/O Offset x1 – DXS Channel x SGD Control ..... RW

7 SGD Start .....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Start SGD operation

6 SGD Terminate.....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Terminate SGD operation

5 SGD Auto-Start
- 0 Stop at EOL ..... default
- 1 Auto Restart at EOL

4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3 SGD Pause
- 0 Release pause and resume the transfer
- 1 Pause SGD read operation (SGD pointer stays at the current address). SGD will finish transferring the current block before pausing.

2 Interrupt on Stop Index = Current Index and End of Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated when the current index equals the stop index (x0[2] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

1 Interrupt on EOL @ End of Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated on EOL (x0[1] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

0 Interrupt on FLAG @ End-of-Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated on FLAG (x0[0] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

I/O Offset x2 – DXS Left Channel x Volume (3Fh).....RW

I/O Offset x3 – DXS Right Channel x Volume (3Fh) .....RW

7-6 Reserved (Do Not Program).....always write 0's

5-0 Volume Control

000000	0 db
…	…
000111	-10.5 db
…	…
011111	-46.5 db
…	…
111111	Muted (instead of -94.5 db) ..... default

I/O Offset x7-x4 – DXS Chan x SGD Table Ptr Base.....RW

31-0 SGD Table Pointer Base Address (even addr).... W
Current Pointer Address .....R

I/O Offset xB-x8 – StopIndex / DataType / SampleRate RW

31-24 SGD Stop Index Setting.....default = FFh

23-22 Reserved ..... always reads 0

21-20 PCM Format

Selects the format used by the controller to process the incoming sample.

00	8-bit Mono..... default
01	8-bit Stereo
10	16-bit Mono
11	16-bit Stereo

19-0 Sample Rate.....default = FFFFFh (48K)

This field allows the sample rate converter to know the sample rate of an incoming sample so the converter can properly convert the sample into the required 48 KHz sample output. Program as (2^{20} / 48.000) * Sample Rate

I/O Offset xF-xC – DXS Chan x SGD Current Count.... RO

31-24 Current SGD Index

This field reports the index the SGD engine is currently processing.

23-0 Current SGD Count

This field reports the count remaining in the current entry being processed. For example, if 10 bytes of a 30-byte count have been transferred, this field would read 20 to indicate 20 bytes remaining.

Audio SGD Table Format

63	62	61-56	55-32	31-0
EOL	FLAG	-reserved-	Base Count [23:0]	Base Address [31:0]

EOL End Of Link. 1 indicates this block is the last of the link. If the channel "Interrupt on EOL" bit is set, then an interrupt is generated at the end of the transfer.

FLAG Block Flag. If set, transfer pauses at the end of this block. If the channel "Interrupt on FLAG" bit is set, then an interrupt is generated at the end of this block.

Multichannel SGD Registers

I/O Offset 40 – Multichannel SGD Status .....RWC

7 SGD Active ..... RO
- 0 SGD has completed or been terminated default
- 1 SGD Active

6-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Current SGD Index Equals Stop Index ..... RO
- 0 SGD index not equal to stop index..... default
- 1 SGD index being processed equals the stop index. This bit differs from bit-2 of this register in that this bit becomes 1 as soon as the SGD *reaches* the index equal to the stop index. Bit-2 becomes 1 after the SGD *finishes processing* the index equal to the stop index. So this bit will always turn on before bit-2.

3 SGD Trigger Queued..... RO

This bit reports whether the trigger used to restart the SGD operation is queued (I/O Offset 41[1] = 1 while the SGD engine is running).
- 0 SGD trigger not queued..... default
- 1 SGD trigger queued (when SGD reaches EOL, it will restart).

2 SGD Stop Interrupt Status.....RWC
- 1 SGD finished the index equal to the stop index set in 4B-48[31-24].

1 SGD EOL (End Of Link).....RWC
- 1 Block is the last of the link. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset 41[1] = 1.

0 SGD Flag .....RWC
- 1 Block complete. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset 41[0] = 1.

I/O Offset 41 – Multichannel SGD Control..... RW

7 SGD Start .....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Start SGD operation

6 SGD Terminate.....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Terminate SGD operation

5 SGD Auto-Start
- 0 Stop at EOL ..... default
- 1 Auto Restart at EOL

4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3 SGD Pause
- 0 Release pause and resume the transfer
- 1 Pause SGD read operation (SGD pointer stays at the current address). SGD will finish transferring the current block before pausing.

2 Interrupt on Stop Index = Current Index and End of Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated when the current index equals the stop index (40[2] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

1 Interrupt on EOL @ End of Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated on EOL (40[1] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

0 Interrupt on FLAG @ End-of-Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated on FLAG (40[0] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

I/O Offset 42 – Multichannel SGD Format .....RW

7 PCM Format
Selects the PCM format used by the controller to process the incoming sample.
0 8-bit ..... default
1 16-bit

6-4 Number of Channels Supported
000 -reserved-..... default
001 One Channel
010 Two Channels
011 Three Channels
100 Four Channels
101 Five Channels
110 Six Channels
111 -reserved-

3-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

I/O Offset 43 – Multichannel Scratch Register .....RW

7-0 No Hardware Function..... default = 00h

I/O Offset 47-44 – Multichannel SGD Table Ptr Base ...RW

31-0 SGD Table Pointer Base Address (even addr).... W
Current Pointer Address .....R

I/O Offset 4B-48 – Multichannel SGD Slot Select..... RW

31-24 SGD Stop Index Setting ..... default = FFh

23-20 Data 1 Select
0000 Data in the sample is assigned to slot 3 . default
0001 Data in the sample is assigned to slot 4
0010 Data in the sample is assigned to slot 7
0011 Data in the sample is assigned to slot 8
0100 Data in the sample is assigned to slot 6
0101 Data in the sample is assigned to slot 9
6-F -reserved

19-16 Data 2 Select
15-12 Data 3 Select
11-8 Data 4 Select
7-4 Data 5 Select
3-0 Data 6 Select

I/O Offset 4F-4C – Multichannel SGD Current Count .. RO

31-24 Current SGD Index
This field reports the index the SGD engine is currently processing.

23-0 Current SGD Count
This field reports the count remaining in the current entry being processed. For example, if 10 bytes of a 30-byte count have been transferred, this field would read 20 to indicate 20 bytes remaining.

Write Channel 0 SGD Registers

I/O Offset 60 – Write Channel 0 SGD Status.....RWC

7 SGD Active ..... RO
- 0 SGD has completed or been terminated default
- 1 SGD Active

6 SGD Paused ..... RO
- 0 SGD not paused..... default
- 1 SGD Paused

5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Current SGD Index Equals Stop Index ..... RO
- 0 SGD index not equal to stop index..... default
- 1 SGD index being processed equals the stop index. This bit differs from bit-2 of this register in that this bit becomes 1 as soon as the SGD *reaches* the index equal to the stop index. Bit-2 becomes 1 after the SGD *finishes processing* the index equal to the stop index. So this bit will always turn on before bit-2.

3 SGD Trigger Queued..... RO

This bit reports whether the trigger used to restart the SGD operation is queued (I/O Offset 61[1] = 1 while the SGD engine is running).
- 0 SGD trigger not queued..... default
- 1 SGD trigger queued (when SGD reaches EOL, it will restart).

2 SGD Stop Interrupt Status.....RWC
- 1 SGD finished the index equal to the stop index set in 6B-68[31-24].

1 SGD EOL (End Of Link).....RWC
- 1 Block is the last of the link. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset 61[1] = 1.

0 SGD Flag .....RWC
- 1 Block complete. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset 61[0] = 1.

I/O Offset 61 – Write Channel 0 SGD Control ..... RW

7 SGD Start .....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Start SGD operation

6 SGD Terminate.....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Terminate SGD operation

5 SGD Auto-Start
- 0 Stop at EOL ..... default
- 1 Auto Restart at EOL

4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3 SGD Pause
- 0 Release pause and resume the transfer
- 1 Pause SGD read operation (SGD pointer stays at the current address). SGD will finish transferring the current block before pausing.

2 Interrupt on Stop Index = Current Index and End of Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated when the current index equals the stop index (60[2] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

1 Interrupt on EOL @ End of Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated on EOL (60[1] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

0 Interrupt on FLAG @ End-of-Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated on FLAG (60[0] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

I/O Offset 62 – Write Channel 0 SGD Format .....RW

7 Reserved (Do Not Program).....always write 0
6 Recording FIFO
0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable
5-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

I/O Offset 63 – Write Channel 0 Input Select.....RW

7-3 Reserved ..... always reads 0
2 Input Source Select
0 Line In (Slot 3, 4)..... default
1 Mic In (Slot 6)
1-0 Recording Source Select
00 Primary Codex ..... default
01 Secondary Codec 01
10 Secondary Codec 10
11 Secondary Codec 11

I/O Offset 67-64 – Wr Channel 0 SGD Table Ptr Base..RW

31-0 SGD Table Pointer Base Address (even addr).... W
Current Pointer Address .....R

I/O Offset 6B-68 – Write Channel 0 SGD Stop Index ... RW

31-24 SGD Stop Index Setting ..... default = FFh
23-22 Reserved .....always reads 0
21-20 PCM Format
Selects the PCM format used by the controller to process the incoming sample.
00 8-bit Mono ..... default
01 8-bit Stereo
10 16-bit Mono
11 16-bit Stereo
19-16 Reserved ..... **RW**
15-0 Reserved .....always reads 0

I/O Offset 6F-6C – Wr Channel 0 SGD Current Count. RO

31-24 Current SGD Index
This field reports the index the SGD engine is currently processing.
23-0 Current SGD Count
This field reports the count remaining in the current entry being processed. For example, if 10 bytes of a 30-byte count have been transferred, this field would read 20 to indicate 20 bytes remaining.

Write Channel 1 SGD Registers

I/O Offset 70 – Write Channel 1 SGD Status.....RWC

7 SGD Active ..... RO
- 0 SGD has completed or been terminated default
- 1 SGD Active

6 SGD Paused ..... RO
- 0 SGD not paused..... default
- 1 SGD Paused

5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 Current SGD Index Equals Stop Index ..... RO
- 0 SGD index not equal to stop index..... default
- 1 SGD index being processed equals the stop index. This bit differs from bit-2 of this register in that this bit becomes 1 as soon as the SGD *reaches* the index equal to the stop index. Bit-2 becomes 1 after the SGD *finishes processing* the index equal to the stop index. So this bit will always turn on before bit-2.

3 SGD Trigger Queued ..... RO

This bit reports whether the trigger used to restart the SGD operation is queued (I/O Offset 71[1] = 1 while the SGD engine is running).
- 0 SGD trigger not queued..... default
- 1 SGD trigger queued (when SGD reaches EOL, it will restart).

2 SGD Stop Interrupt Status.....RWC
- 1 SGD finished the index equal to the stop index set in 7B-78[31-24].

1 SGD EOL (End Of Link).....RWC
- 1 Block is the last of the link. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset 71[1] = 1.

0 SGD Flag .....RWC
- 1 Block complete. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset 71[0] = 1.

I/O Offset 71 – Write Channel 1 SGD Control ..... RW

7 SGD Start .....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Start SGD operation

6 SGD Terminate.....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Terminate SGD operation

5 SGD Auto-Start
- 0 Stop at EOL ..... default
- 1 Auto Restart at EOL

4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3 SGD Pause
- 0 Release pause and resume the transfer
- 1 Pause SGD read operation (SGD pointer stays at the current address). SGD will finish transferring the current block before pausing.

2 Interrupt on Stop Index = Current Index and End of Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated when the current index equals the stop index (70[2] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

1 Interrupt on EOL @ End of Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated on EOL (70[1] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

0 Interrupt on FLAG @ End-of-Block

Controls whether an interrupt is generated on FLAG (70[0] = 1).
- 0 Disable..... default
- 1 Enable

I/O Offset 72 – Write Channel 1 SGD Format .....RW

7 **Reserved (Do Not Program)**.....always write 0
6 **Recording FIFO**
0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable
5-0 **Reserved** ..... always reads 0

I/O Offset 73 – Write Channel 1 Input Select.....RW

7-3 **Reserved** ..... always reads 0
2 **Input Source Select**
0 Line In (Slot 3, 4)..... default
1 Mic In (Slot 6)
1-0 **Recording Source Select**
00 Primary Codex ..... default
01 Secondary Codec 01
10 Secondary Codec 10
11 Secondary Codec 11

I/O Offset 77-74 – Wr Channel 1 SGD Table Ptr Base..RW

31-0 **SGD Table Pointer Base Address (even addr).... W**
Current Pointer Address .....R

I/O Offset 7B-78 – Write Channel 1 SGD Stop Index ... RW

31-24 **SGD Stop Index Setting** ..... default = FFh
23-22 **Reserved** .....always reads 0
21-20 **PCM Format**
Selects the PCM format used by the controller to process the incoming sample.
00 8-bit Mono ..... default
01 8-bit Stereo
10 16-bit Mono
11 16-bit Stereo
19-16 **Reserved** ..... **RW**
15-0 **Reserved** .....always reads 0

I/O Offset 7F-7C – Wr Channel 1 SGD Current Count. RO

31-24 **Current SGD Index**
This field reports the index the SGD engine is currently processing.
23-0 **Current SGD Count**
This field reports the count remaining in the current entry being processed. For example, if 10 bytes of a 30-byte count have been transferred, this field would read 20 to indicate 20 bytes remaining.

Codec Command / Status SGD Registers

These registers are used to send commands to the codecs

I/O Offset 83-80 – AC97 Controller Cmd (W) / Status (R)

This register may be accessed from either function 5 or 6

31-30 Codec ID ..... **RW**
- 00 Select Codec CID = 00
- 01 Select Codec CID = 01
- 10 Select Codec CID = 10
- 11 Select Codec CID = 11

29 Codec 11 Data / Status / Index Valid ..... RO
- 0 Not Valid
- 1 Valid (OK to Read bits 0-23)

28 Codec 10 Data / Status / Index Valid ..... RO
- 0 Not Valid
- 1 Valid (OK to Read bits 0-23)

27 Codec 01 Data / Status / Index Valid ..... RO
- 0 Not Valid
- 1 Valid (OK to Read bits 0-23)

26 Reserved ..... always reads 0

25 Codec 00 Data / Status / Index Valid ..... RO
- 0 Not Valid
- 1 Valid (OK to Read bits 0-23)

24 AC97 Controller Busy ..... RO
- 0 Codec is ready for a register access command
- 1 AC97 Controller is sending a command to the codec (commands are not accepted)

23 Codec Register Read / Write Mode ..... **RW**
- 0 Select Codec register write mode
- 1 Select Codec register read mode

22-16 Codec Register Index [7:1] ..... **RW**

Index of the AC97 codec register to access (in the attached codec). Data must be written before or at the same time as Index because writing to the index triggers the AC97 controller to access the addressed codec register over the AC-link interface.

15-0 Codec Register Data ..... **RW**

I/O Offset 87-84 – Audio SGD Status Shadow ..... RO

31 Audio Record 1 SGD Active Shadow ..... (Rx70[7])
30 Audio Record 1 SGD Stop Shadow ..... (Rx70[2])
29 Audio Record 1 SGD EOL Shadow ..... (Rx70[1])
28 Audio Record 1 SGD Flag Shadow ..... (Rx70[0])
27 Audio Record 0 SGD Active Shadow ..... (Rx60[7])
26 Audio Record 0 SGD Stop Shadow ..... (Rx60[2])
25 Audio Record 0 SGD EOL Shadow ..... (Rx60[1])
24 Audio Record 0 SGD Flag Shadow ..... (Rx60[0])

23-20 Reserved ..... always reads 0

19 MultiChannel SGD Active Shadow ..... (Rx40[7])
18 MultiChannel SGD Stop Shadow ..... (Rx40[2])
17 MultiChannel SGD EOL Shadow ..... (Rx40[1])
16 MultiChannel SGD Flag Shadow ..... (Rx40[0])

15 DX Channel 3 SGD Active Shadow ..... (Rx30[7])
14 DX Channel 3 SGD Stop Shadow ..... (Rx30[2])
13 DX Channel 3 SGD EOL Shadow ..... (Rx30[1])
12 DX Channel 3 SGD Flag Shadow ..... (Rx30[0])
11 DX Channel 2 SGD Active Shadow ..... (Rx20[7])
10 DX Channel 2 SGD Stop Shadow ..... (Rx20[2])
9 DX Channel 2 SGD EOL Shadow ..... (Rx20[1])
8 DX Channel 2 SGD Flag Shadow ..... (Rx20[0])

7 DX Channel 1 SGD Active Shadow ..... (Rx10[7])
6 DX Channel 1 SGD Stop Shadow ..... (Rx10[2])
5 DX Channel 1 SGD EOL Shadow ..... (Rx10[1])
4 DX Channel 1 SGD Flag Shadow ..... (Rx10[0])
3 DX Channel 0 SGD Active Shadow ..... (Rx00[7])
2 DX Channel 0 SGD Stop Shadow ..... (Rx00[2])
1 DX Channel 0 SGD EOL Shadow ..... (Rx00[1])
0 DX Channel 0 SGD Flag Shadow ..... (Rx00[0])

I/O Offset 8B-88 – Codec GPI Interrupt Status / GPIO. RO

This register may be accessed from either function 5 or 6

31-16 GPI Interrupt Status ..... RO
- R GPI[15-0] Interrupt Status
- W 1 to clear

15-0 Codec GPIO ..... RO
- R Reflect status of Codec GPI[15-0]
- W Triggers AC-Link slot-12 output to codec

I/O Offset 8F-8C – Codec GPI Interrupt Enable ..... RO

This register may be accessed from either function 5 or 6

31-16 Interrupt on GPI[15-0] Change of Status ..... RO
- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable

15-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 90-9F – Mapped from Function 5/6 Rx40-4F ..... RO

Device 17 Function 6 Registers - AC97 Modem Controller

The modem controller interface is hardware compatible with AC97. The PCI configuration registers for the modem controller are located in the function 6 PCI configuration space of the VT8233. The I/O registers are located in the system I/O space.

PCI Configuration Space Header

Offset 1-0 - Vendor ID ..... RO

7-0 Vendor ID ..... (1106h = VIA Technologies)

Offset 3-2 - Device ID ..... RO

7-0 Device ID (3068h = VT8233 Modem Controller)

Offset 5-4 – Command .....RW

15-10 Reserved ..... always reads 0
9 Reserved (fast back-to-back)..... fixed at 0
8 SERR# Enable..... fixed at 0
7 Reserved (address stepping)..... fixed at 0
6 Reserved (parity error response) ..... fixed at 0
5 Reserved (VGA palette snoop) ..... fixed at 0
4 Reserved (memory write and invalidate) .... fixed at 0
3 Reserved (special cycle monitoring)..... fixed at 0
2 Bus Master ..... fixed at 0
1 Memory Space..... fixed at 0
0 I/O Space ..... default=0 (disabled)

Offset 7-6 - Status (0200h) ..... RO

15 Detected Parity Error..... always reads 0
14 Signalled System Error..... fixed at 0
13 Received Master Abort..... fixed at 0
12 Received Target Abort..... fixed at 0
11 Signalled Target Abort ..... fixed at 0
10-9 DEVSEL# Timing
00 Fast
01 Medium ..... fixed
10 Slow
11 Reserved
8 Data Parity Error..... fixed at 0
7 Fast Back-to-Back Capable..... fixed at 0
6-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 8 - Revision ID (CD=50h, CE=70h) **..... RO**

7-0 Silicon Revision Code

Offset 9 - Programming Interface (00h) **..... *RO**

Offset A - Sub Class Code (80h) **..... *RO**

Offset B - Base Class Code (07h) **..... *RO**

*Registers 9-B are RW if function 5-6 Rx44[5] = 1

Offset 13-10 - Base Address 0 – SGD Control / Status .. RW

31-16 Reserved .....always reads 0
15-8 Base Address.....default = 00h
7-0 00000001b (256 bytes)

Device 0 Offset 2D-2C – Subsystem Vendor ID (0000h)*RO

15-0 Subsystem Vendor ID .....default = 0

*This register is RW if function 5-6 Rx44[4] = 1

Device 0 Offset 2F-2E – Subsystem ID (0000h)..... *RO

15-0 Subsystem ID .....default = 0

*This register is RW if function 5-6 Rx44[4] = 1

Offset 3C - Interrupt Line..... RW

7-4 Reserved .....always reads 0
3-0 Modem Interrupt Routing
0000 Disabled..... default
0001 IRQ1
0010 Reserved
0011 IRQ3
0100 IRQ4
0101 IRQ5
0110 IRQ6
0111 IRQ7
1000 IRQ8
1001 IRQ9
1010 IRQ10
1011 IRQ11
1100 IRQ12
1101 IRQ13
1110 IRQ14
1111 Disabled
APIC (See Device 17 Function 0 Rx4D[7])
x000 IRQ16
x001 IRQ17
x010 IRQ18
… …
x111 IRQ23

Offset 3D - Interrupt Pin (03h) **.....RO**

Offset 3E - Minimum Grant (00h)**.....RO**

Offset 3F - Maximum Latency (00h) **.....RO**

Modem-Specific PCI Configuration Registers

Offset 40 – AC Link Interface Status ..... RO

7-6 Reserved ..... always reads 0

5 Codec CID=11b Ready Status..... RO
- 0 Codec Not Ready
- 1 Codec Ready (modem ctrlr can access codec)

4 Codec CID=10b Ready Status..... RO
- 0 Codec Not Ready
- 1 Codec Ready (modem ctrlr can access codec)

3 Reserved ..... always reads 0

2 Codec CID=01b Ready Status..... RO
- 0 Codec Not Ready
- 1 Codec Ready (modem ctrlr can access codec)

1 AC97 Low-Power Status ..... RO
- 0 AC97 Codecs not in low-power mode
- 1 AC97 Codecs in low-power mode

This bit reports 1 when Rx26[4] of the codecs is 1. It is used to determine whether the bit-clock should be gated.

0 Codec CID=00b Ready Status..... RO
- 0 Codec Not Ready
- 1 Codec Ready (modem ctrlr can access codec)

Offset 41 – AC Link Interface Control ..... RW

7 AC-Link Interface
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

6 AC-Link Reset

0Assert AC-Link Reset (used for cold reset)..... def
1De-assert AC-Link Reset

5 AC-Link Sync
- 0 Release SYNC ..... default
- 1 Force SYNC High (used for warm reset)

4 AC-Link Serial Data Out
- 0 Release SDO ..... default
- 1 Force SDO High

3 Variable-Sample-Rate On-Demand Mode ..... RO

This bit is controlled through function 5 but may be read from function 6.
- 0 Disable (AC Link sends data every frame).. def
- 1 Enable (AC Link sends data only when there is a request from the codec)

2 3D Audio Channel Slots 3/4 ..... RO

This bit is controlled through function 5 but may be read from function 6.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

Note that slots 7/8 and 6/9 do not have to be selected as they are not muxed with DXS as are slots 3/4)

1-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 42 – Function Enable ..... RO

This register is controlled through function 5 but may be read from function 6.

7-6 Reserved ..... always reads 0

5 Function 5 Config Reg Rx2C Writable ..... RO

0 Device 17 Function 5 Rx2C-2F RO ..... default

1 Device 17 Function 5 Rx2C-2F RW

4-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 44 – MC97 Interface Control .....RW

7 AC-Link Interface for Slot-5 (Modem)

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable

6 Secondary Codec Support

0 Disable ..... default

1 Enable

5 Function 6 Config Reg Rx9-B Writable

0 Device 17 Function 6 Rx9-B RO ..... default

1 Device 17 Function 6 Rx9-B RW

4 Function 6 Config Reg 2Ch Writable

0 Device 17 Function 6 Rx2C-2F RO ..... default

1 Device 17 Function 6 Rx2C-2F RW

3 Sync

This bit reports whether there is activity in function 6 (modem). When function 5 (audio) enters low-power state and wants to gate bit-clock, software needs to check this bit to see whether bit-clock can actually be gated, as function 6 shares the same bit-clock.

0 Function 6 activity in progress that requires bit-clock

1 Function 6 does not need bit-clock so bit-clock can be gated

2-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 48 – Volume Change Rate Control ..... RO

This register is controlled through function 5 but may be read from function 6.

7-4 Volume Change Rate..... RO

This field controls the volume change rate in the sample rate converter

0000 Volume Adjust Every Frame (sync cycle)... def

…

1111 Volume Adjust Every 16 Frames (sync cycles)

3 Sync ..... RO

This bit reports whether there is activity in function 5 (audio). When function 6 (modem) enters low-power state and wants to gate bit-clock, software needs to check this bit to see whether bit-clock can actually be gated, as function 5 shares the same bit-clock.

0 Function 5 activity in progress that requires bit-clock

1 Function 5 does not need bit-clock so bit-clock can be gated

2-0 Reserved ..... **RW**

Offset 49 – S/PDIF Control (CE Only) ..... RO

This register is controlled through function 5 but may be read from function 6.

7-4 Reserved ..... **RO**

3 DX3 (DirectSound) Channel S/PDIF Support .. RO

This bit controls whether DirectSound Channel 3 is used as S/PDIF support

0 Disable..... default

1 Enable

2 Reserved ..... **RO**

1-0 S/PDIF Data Slot Select..... RO

00 Slot 10/11..... default

01 Slot 3/4

10 Slot 7/8

11 Slot 6/9

Offset D3-D0 – Power Mgmt Capability..... RO

31-0 Power Mgmt Capability.... always reads 0002 0001h

Offset D7-D4 – Power State ..... RW

31-2 Reserved ..... always reads 0

1-0 Power State (D3 / D0 Only)

I/O Base 0 Regs – Modem Scatter / Gather DMA

Modem SGD Read Channel Registers

I/O Offset 40 – Modem SGD Read Channel Status.....RWC

7 SGD Active ..... RO
- 0 SGD has completed or been terminated default
- 1 SGD Active

6 SGD Paused ..... RO
- 0 SGD not paused..... default
- 1 SGD Paused

5-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3 SGD Trigger Queued ..... RO
This bit reports whether the trigger used to restart the SGD operation is queued (I/O Offset 41[1] = 1 while the SGD engine is running).
- 0 SGD trigger not queued..... default
- 1 SGD trigger queued (when SGD reaches EOL, it will restart).

2 SGD Stop Interrupt Status.....RWC
- 1 SGD finished the index equal to the stop index set in 4B-48[31-24].

1 SGD EOL (End Of Link).....RWC
- 1 Block is the last of the link. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset 41[1] = 1.

0 SGD Flag .....RWC
- 1 Block complete. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset 41[0] = 1.

I/O Offset 41 – Modem SGD Read Channel Control .....RW

7 SGD Start .....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Start SGD read channel operation

6 SGD Terminate .....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Terminate SGD read channel operation

5-4 Test (Do Not Program) .....always write 0

3 SGD Pause .....RW
- 0 Release SGD read channel pause and resume the transfer from the paused line
- 1 Pause SGD read channel operation (SGD read channel pointer stays at the current address)

2-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

I/O Offset 42 – Modem SGD Read Channel Type ..... RW

7 Auto-Start SGD at EOL
- 0 Stop at EOL ..... default
- 1 Auto restart at EOL

6-4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3-2 Interrupt Select
This bit determines the timing of interrupt generation when bit-1 or bit-0 of this register are equal to 1.
- 00 Interrupt at PCI Read of Last Line..... default
- 01 Interrupt at Last Sample Sent
- 10 Interrupt at Less Than One Line to Send
- 11 -reserved-

1 Interrupt on EOL @ End of Block
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

0 Interrupt on FLAG @ End-of-Blk
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

I/O Offset 47-44 – Modem SGD R Ch Table Ptr Base... RW

31-0 SGD Table Pointer Base Address (even addr) .... W
Current Pointer Address ..... R

I/O Offset 4F-4C – Modem SGD R Ch Current Count .. RO

31-24 Current Modem SGD Read Channel Index
This field reports the index the SGD engine is currently processing.

23-0 Current Modem SGD Read Channel Count
This field reports the count remaining in the current entry being processed. For example, if 10 bytes of a 30-byte count have been transferred, this field would read 20 to indicate 20 bytes remaining.

Modem SGD Table Format

63	62	61	60-56	55-32	31-0
EOL	FLAG	STOP	-reserved-	Base Count [23:0]	Base Address [31:0]

Modem SGD Write Channel Registers

I/O Offset 50 – Modem SGD Write Channel Status..... RO

7 SGD Active ..... RO
- 0 SGD has completed or been terminated default
- 1 SGD Active

6 SGD Paused ..... RO
- 0 SGD not paused..... default
- 1 SGD Paused

5-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3 SGD Trigger Queued ..... RO
This bit reports whether the trigger used to restart the SGD operation is queued (I/O Offset 51[1] = 1 while the SGD engine is running).
- 0 SGD trigger not queued..... default
- 1 SGD trigger queued (when SGD reaches EOL, it will restart).

2 SGD Stop Interrupt Status.....RWC
- 1 SGD finished the index equal to the stop index set in 5B-58[31-24].

1 SGD EOL (End Of Link).....RWC
- 1 Block is the last of the link. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset 51[1] = 1.

0 SGD Flag .....RWC
- 1 Block complete. May be used by software as a signal to generate an interrupt request if I/O Offset 51[0] = 1.

I/O Offset 51 – Modem SGD Write Channel Control....RW

7 SGD Start .....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Start SGD write channel operation

6 SGD Terminate .....WO (always reads 0)
- 0 No effect
- 1 Terminate SGD write channel operation

5-4 Test (Do Not Program) .....always write 0

3 SGD Pause .....RW
- 0 Release SGD write channel pause and resume the transfer from the paused line
- 1 Pause SGD write channel operation (SGD write channel pointer stays at current address)

2 Reserved ..... always reads 0

1 Reset Modem Write SGD Operation.....RW

0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

I/O Offset 52 – Modem SGD Write Channel Type ..... RW

7 Auto-Start SGD at EOL
- 0 Stop at EOL ..... default
- 1 Auto restart at EOL

6-2 Reserved ..... always reads 0

1 Interrupt on EOL @ End of Block
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

0 Interrupt on FLAG @ End-of-Blk
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

I/O Offset 57-54 – Modem SGD W Ch Table Ptr Base . RW

31-0 SGD Table Pointer Base Address (even addr) .... W
Current Pointer Address ..... R

I/O Offset 5F-5C – Modem SGD W Ch Current Count. RO

31-24 Current Modem SGD Write Channel Index
This field reports the index the SGD engine is currently processing.

23-0 Current Modem SGD Write Channel Count
This field reports the count remaining in the current entry being processed. For example, if 10 bytes of a 30-byte count have been transferred, this field would read 20 to indicate 20 bytes remaining.

EOL End Of Link. 1 indicates this block is the last of the link. If the channel "Interrupt on EOL" bit is set, then an interrupt is generated at the end of the transfer.

FLAG Block Flag. If set, transfer pauses at the end of this block. If the channel "Interrupt on FLAG" bit is set, then an interrupt is generated at the end of this block.

STOP Block Stop. If set, transfer pauses at the end of this block. To resume the transfer, write 1 to Rx?0[2].

Codec Command / Status SGD Registers

These registers are used to send commands to the codecs

Offset 83-80 – AC97 Controller Command (W) / Status (R)

This register may be accessed from either function 5 or 6

31-30 Codec ID ..... RW
- 00 Select Codec CID = 00
- 01 Select Codec CID = 01
- 10 Select Codec CID = 10
- 11 Select Codec CID = 11

29 Codec 11 Data / Status / Index Valid ..... RO
- 0 Not Valid
- 1 Valid (OK to Read bits 0-23)

28 Codec 10 Data / Status / Index Valid ..... RO
- 0 Not Valid
- 1 Valid (OK to Read bits 0-23)

27 Codec 01 Data / Status / Index Valid ..... RO
- 0 Not Valid
- 1 Valid (OK to Read bits 0-23)

26 Reserved ..... always reads 0

25 Codec 00 Data / Status / Index Valid ..... RO
- 0 Not Valid
- 1 Valid (OK to Read bits 0-23)

24 AC97 Controller Busy ..... RO
- 0 Codec is ready for a register access command
- 1 AC97 Controller is sending a command to the codec (commands are not accepted)

23 Codec Register Read / Write Mode ..... RW
- 0 Select Codec register write mode
- 1 Select Codec register read mode

22-16 Codec Register Index [7:1] ..... RW

Index of the AC97 codec register to access (in the attached codec). Data must be written before or at the same time as Index because writing to the index triggers the AC97 controller to access the addressed codec register over the AC-link interface.

15-0 Codec Register Data ..... RW

Offset 87-84 – Modem SGD Status Shadow ..... RO

31-30 Reserved ..... always reads 0
29 Modem Write SGD Active Shadow ..... (Rx50[7])
28 Modem Read SGD Active Shadow..... (Rx40[7])
27-26 Reserved ..... always reads 0
25 Modem Write SGD Stop Shadow..... (Rx50[2])
24 Modem Read SGD Stop Shadow..... (Rx40[2])

23-22 Reserved ..... always reads 0
21 Modem Write SGD EOL Shadow..... (Rx50[1])
20 Modem Read SGD EOL Shadow..... (Rx40[1])
19-18 Reserved ..... always reads 0
17 Modem Write SGD Flag Shadow..... (Rx50[0])
16 Modem Read SGD Flag Shadow..... (Rx40[0])

15-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 8B-88 – Codec GPI Interrupt Status / GPIO ... RWC

This register may be accessed from either function 5 or 6

31-16 GPI Interrupt Status ..... RWC
- R GPI[15-0] Interrupt Status
- W 1 to clear

15-0 Codec GPIO ..... RW
- R Reflect status of Codec GPI[15-0]
- W Triggers AC-Link slot-12 output to codec

Offset 8F-8C – Codec GPI Interrupt Enable..... RW

This register may be accessed from either function 5 or 6

31-16 Interrupt on GPI[15-0] Change of Status..... RW
- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable

15-0 Reserved ..... always reads 0

Offset 90-9F – Mapped from Function 5/6 Rx40-4F..... RO

Device 18 Function 0 Registers - LAN

All registers are located in the Device 18 Function 0 PCI configuration space of the VT8233. These registers are accessed through PCI configuration mechanism #1 via I/O address CF8 / CFC.

PCI Configuration Space Header

Offset 1-0 - Vendor ID = 1106h ..... RO

Offset 3-2 - Device ID = 3065h..... RO

Offset 5-4 - Command.....RW

- **15-3 Reserved** ..... always reads 0
- **2 Bus Master** ..... always reads 0
- **1 Memory Space**..... always reads 0
- **0 I/O Space** .....RW, default = 0

Offset 7-6 – Status (0400h)..... RO

- **15 Detected Parity Error**..... always reads 0
- **14 Signalled System Error**..... always reads 0
- **13 Received Master Abort**..... always reads 0
- **12 Received Target Abort**..... always reads 0
- **11 Signalled Target Abort** ..... always reads 0
- **10-9 DEVSEL# Timing** ..... fixed at 10 (slow)
- **8 Data Parity Detected**..... always reads 0
- **7 Fast Back-to-Back Capable**..... always reads 0
- **6 UDF Support** ..... always reads 1
- **5 66 MHz Capable**..... always reads 1
- **4 Capabilities (e.g. PCI Pwr Mgmt)** .... always reads 1
- **3-0 Reserved** ..... always reads 0

Offset 8 - Revision ID (40h) ..... RO

Offset 9 - Program Interface ..... RO

Offset A - Sub Class Code..... RO

Offset B - Class Code ..... RO

Offset C – Cache Line Size .....RW

This register must be implemented by master devices that can generate the memory-write-and-invalidate command.

Offset D – Latency Timer .....RW

This register must be implemented as writable by any master that can burst more than two data phases.

Offset E - Header Type (00h) ..... RO

Offset F - BIST (00h)..... RO

Offset 13-10 – I/O Base Address (0000 0000h).....RW

Offset 17-14 – Memory Base Address (0000 0000h).....RW

Offset 2B-28 – Card Bus CIS Pointer (0000 0000h) .....RW

Offset 33-30 – Expansion ROM Base (0000 0000h).....RW

Offset 34 – Capabilities Offset (40h) ..... RO

- **7-0 Capabilities Offset**
  Offset into the LAN function PCI space pointing to the location of the first item in the function's capability list.

Offset 3C - Interrupt Line..... RW

- **7-4 Reserved** .....always reads 0
- **3-0 LAN Interrupt Routing**
  - 0000 Disabled..... default
  - 0001 IRQ1
  - 0010 Reserved
  - 0011 IRQ3
  - 0100 IRQ4
  - 0101 IRQ5
  - 0110 IRQ6
  - 0111 IRQ7
  - 1000 IRQ8
  - 1001 IRQ9
  - 1010 IRQ10
  - 1011 IRQ11
  - 1100 IRQ12
  - 1101 IRQ13
  - 1110 IRQ14
  - 1111 Disabled
  - APIC (See Device 17 Function 0 Rx4D[7])
  - x000 IRQ16
  - x001 IRQ17
  - x010 IRQ18
  - … …
  - x111 IRQ23

Offset 3D - Interrupt Pin (01h)..... RO

- **7-0 Interrupt Routing Mode**
  - 00h Legacy mode interrupt routing
  - 01h Native mode interrupt routing ..... default

LAN-Specific PCI Configuration Registers

Offset 40 – Capability ID (01h)..... RO

- **7-0 Capability ID** .....always reads 01h
  Identifies the linked list item as being PCI power management registers

Offset 41 – Next Item Pointer (00h)..... RO

- **7-0 Next Item Pointer** .....always reads 00h
  Offset into the LAN function PCI space pointing to the location of the next item in the function's capability list.

Offset 43-42 – Power Mgmt Configuration (0002h) ..... RO

15-11 Power State In Which LAN Can Assert PME# .....
..... default = 0

1xxxx PME# can be asserted from D3C
x1xxx PME# can be asserted from D3H
xx1xx PME# can be asserted from D2
xxx1x PME# can be asserted from D1
xxxx1 PME# can be asserted from D0

10 D2 PM State
0 Not Supported ..... default
1 Supported

9 D1 PM State
0 Not Supported ..... default
1 Supported

8-6 PCI 3.3V Auxiliary Current Requirements .....
..... always reads 0

5 Device-Specific Initialization ..... always reads 0

4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3 PME# Operation Uses PCI Clock
0 No PCI clock req'd for PME# generation ... def
1 PME# generated using PCI clock

2-0 Power Management Interface Revision . reads 010b
Readback of 010b indicates compliance with revision 1.1 of the power mangement interface specification

Offset 47-44 – Power Management Control / Status... RWC

31-0 Control / Status ..... default = 0000 0000h
(see Power Management Specification 1.0)

LAN I/O Registers

Offset 05-00 – Ethernet Address .....RW

Unless the EEPROM is disabled, the Ethernet Address is loaded to this register from the EEPROM every time the system starts up.

Offset 06 – Receive Control (00h) .....RW

7-5 Receive FIFO Threshold
This field determines the threshold required before data in the receive FIFO is forwarded. When the FIFO reaches the level selected in this field, data will start being forwarded.

000 64 byte..... default
001 32 byte
010 128 byte
011 256 byte
100 512 byte
101 768 byte
110 1024 byte
111 Store & Forward (data is forwarded after the entire packet has been received)

4 Physical Address Packets Accepted

0 Packets with a physical destination address are not accepted..... default
1 All packets with a physical destination address are accepted..... default

3 Broadcast Packets Accepted

0 Broadcast packets are rejected ..... default
1 Broadcast packets are accepted

2 Multicast Packets Accepted

0 Multicast packets are rejected ..... default
1 Multicast packets are accepted

1 Small Packets Accepted

0 Packets smaller than 64 bytes are rejected .. def
1 Packets smaller than 64 bytes are accepted

0 Error Packets Accepted

0 Packets with receive errors are rejected ..... def
1 Packets with receive errors are accepted

Offset 07 – Transmit Control (08h)..... RW

7-5 Transmit FIFO Threshold
This field determines the threshold required before data in the transmit FIFO is forwarded. When the FIFO reaches the level selected in this field, data will start being forwarded.

	100T	10T	
000	128 byte	64 byte	..... default
001	256 byte	128 byte	
010	512 byte	256 byte	
011	1024 byte	512 byte	
1xx	Store & Forward		

4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3 Backoff Priority Selection
This bit determines the backoff algorithm used when collision occurs.

0 VIA backoff algorithm
1 NSC compatible backoff algorithm **..... default**

2-1 Transmit Loopback Mode

00 Normal..... default
01 Internal loopback (signal is looped back to the host from the MAC)
10 MII loopback (signal is looped back to the host from the PHY)
11 -reserved- (do not program)

0 Reserved .....always reads 0

Offset 08 – Command 0 (00h).....RW

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6 Receive Poll Demand ..... default = 0
If this bit is set to 1, the Receive Descriptor (RD) will be polled once (this bit will be cleared by hardware after the polling is complete)

5 Transmit Poll Demand..... default = 0
If this bit is set to 1, the Transmit Descriptor (TD) will be polled once (this bit will be cleared by hardware after the polling is complete)

4 Transmit Process
- 0 Transmit engine disabled..... default
- 1 Transmit engine enabled (transmit may occur)

3 Receive Process
- 0 Receive disabled..... default
- 1 Receive enabled

2 Stop NIC
- 0 NIC enabled ..... default
- 1 NIC disabled (transmit/receive cannot occur)

1 Start NIC
- 0 No command entered ..... default
- 1 Start the NIC

0 Begin Initialization Process..... default = 0
If this bit is set to 1, the Receive Descriptor (RD) will be polled once (this bit functions like bit-6 but for legacy systems)

Offset 09 – Command 1 (00h) ..... RW

7 Software Reset
- 0 No reset..... default
- 1 Reset the MAC

6 Receive Poll Demand 1.....default = 0
This bit functions the same as Rx8[6]. The function can be enabled by setting either bit (for backward compatibility).

5 Transmit Poll Demand 1.....default = 0
This bit functions the same as Rx8[5]. The function can be enabled by setting either bit (for backward compatibility).

4 Reserved .....always reads 0

3 TD / RD Auto Polling
- 0 Enable (polling interval is determined by Rx6F[2:0]) ..... default
- 1 Disable

2 Full Duplex
- 0 Set MAC to half duplex mode ..... default
- 1 Set MAC to full duplex mode

1 Reserved .....always reads 0

0 Early Receive Mode
- 0 Disable (interrupt is generated after a packet has been completely received)..... default
- 1 Enable (interrupt is generated as soon as packet reception has started)

Offset 0C – Interrupt Status 0 (00h).....RW

- **7 CRC or Miss Packet Tally Counter Overflow**
  Set if either counter overflows (both counters are 16 bits)
- **6 PCI Bus Error**
  Set if PCI bus error occurred.
- **5 Receive Buffer Link Error**
  Set when there is not enough buffer space for a packet requiring multiple buffers.
- **4 Transmit Buffer Underflow**
- **3 Transmit Error (Packet Transmit Aborted)**
  Set due to excessive collisions (more than 16), transmit underflow, or transmit data linking error
- **2 Receive Error**
  Set due to CRC error, frame alignment error, FIFO overflow, or received data linking error
- **1 Packet Transmitted Successfully**
- **0 Packet Received Successfully**

Offset 0D – Interrupt Status 1 (00h).....RW

- **7 General Purpose Interrupt**
  This bit is set when there is a general purpose interrupt event (Rx84). This bit is set when any bit in Rx84 equals one and when its corresponding mask bit in Rx86 also equals one.
- **6 Port State Change (PHY)**
- **5 Transmit Abort Due to Excessive Collisions**
  Set when there is a transmit error that is due to excessive collisions. Alternatively, Rx0C[3] is set for all transmit errors.
- **4 Receive Buffer Full**
  Set when there is no more buffer space available in system memory.
- **3 Receive Packet Race**
  Set when there is not enough room in the FIFO to receive an additional packet.
- **2 Receive FIFO Overflow**
- **1 Transmit FIFO Underflow**
- **0 Early Receive Interrupt**
  Set if a packet is being received and Rx9[0] = 1.

Offset 0E – Interrupt Mask 0 (00h)..... RW

Bits correspond to the bits in Interrupt Status Register 0. An interrupt is generated when corresponding bits in both registers equal 1.

Offset 0F – Interrupt Mask 1 (00h)..... RW

Bits correspond to the bits in Interrupt Status Register 1. An interrupt is generated when corresponding bits in both registers equal 1.

Offset 17-10 – Multicast Address..... RW

The value in this register determines which Multicast addresses are received.

Offset 1B-18 – RX Address ..... RW

This register reports the receive transcriptor address that is being accessed.

Offset 1F-1C – TX Address..... RW

This register reports the transmit transcriptor address that is being accessed.

Offset 23-20 – Receive Status (0000 0000h).....RW

31 Descriptor Owner
- 0 Descriptor Owned By Host (NIC cannot access descriptor)
- 1 Descriptor Owned by NIC (NIC can access descriptor)

This bit has no default so must be set by the driver at initialization.

30-27 Reserved ..... always reads 0
26-16 Received Packet Length..... **RO,** def = 0
15 Received Packet Successfully ..... **RO,** def = 0
14 Reserved ..... always reads 0
13 NIC Accepted Multicast Packet..... **RO,** def = 0
12 NIC Accepted Broadcast Packet..... **RO,** def = 0
11 NIC Accepted Physical Address Packet **RO,** def = 0
10 Chain Buffer..... def = 0
Set if packet too large to occupy a single receive transcriptor.
9-8 Buffer Descriptor Start / End..... **RO**
For packets too large to fit into a single receive descriptor and thus occupy multiple RD's, this field reports whether this RD is the start, middle or end.
- 00 Chain Buffer Middle Descriptor..... default
- 01 Chain Buffer End Descriptor
- 10 Chain Buffer Start Descriptor
- 11 Single Buffer Descriptor (packet accupies only one descriptor)

7 Buffer Underflow Error ..... **RO,** default = 0
6 System Error ..... **RO,** default = 0
5 Run Packet (< 64 bytes) ..... **RO,** default = 0
4 Long Packet (> 2500 bytes)..... **RO,** default = 0
3 FIFO Overflow Error..... **RO,** default = 0
2 Frame Alignment Error ..... **RO,** default = 0
1 CRC Error ..... **RO,** default = 0
0 Receiver Error..... **RO,** default = 0

Offset 27-24 – Rx Data Buffer Control (0000 0000h)..... RO

31-11 Reserved ..... always reads 0
10-0 Rx Data Buffer Size..... default = 0
The receive data buffer size for this descriptor. The total byte count of the entire frame will be stored in the last descriptor.

Offset 2B-28 – Rx Data Buffer Start Address ..... RO

31-0 Rx Data Buffer Start Address

Offset 2F-2C – Rx Data Buffer Branch Address..... RO

31-0 Rx Data Buffer Branch Address

Note: Rx20-2F reflect values from the RD being accessed.

Offset 43-40 – Transmit Status (0000 0000h).....RW

31 Descriptor Owner
- 0 Descriptor Owned By Host (NIC cannot access descriptor)
- 1 Descriptor Owned by NIC (NIC can access descriptor)

This bit has no default so must be set by the driver at initialization.

30-16 Reserved ..... always reads 0
15 Transmit Error..... **RO,** default = 0
- 0 Transmit Successful ..... default
- 1 Excessive Collisions During Transmit Attempt

14 Reserved ..... always reads 0
13 System Error ..... **RO,** default = 0
12 Invalid TD Format or Structure or TD Overflow ..... **RO,** default = 0
11 Transmit Data FIFO Underflow..... **RO,** def = 0
10 Carrier Sense Lost During Transmit ... **RO,** def = 0
9 Out of Window Collision ..... **RO,** def = 0 (collision outside initial 64 bytes)
8 Transmit Abort (Excessive Collisions) . **RO,** def = 0
7 CD Heartbeat Issued (10BaseT Only) ... **RO,** def = 0
6-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0
4 Collision Detected During Transmit..... **RO,** def = 0
3-0 Collision Retry Count ..... **RO,** def = 0

Offset 47-44 – Tx Data Buffer Control (0000 0000h)..... RO

31-24 Reserved .....always reads 0
23 Send-Complete Interrupt
- 0 Interrupt not generated.....default
- 1 Interrupt generated after send complete

22 End of Transmit Packet
For packets too large to fit into a single transmit descriptor and thus occupy multiple TD's, this bit reports whether this TD is the End TD.
- 0 This TD is not the End TD .....default
- 1 This TD is the End TD

21 Start of Transmit Packet
For packets too large to fit into a single transmit descriptor and thus occupy multiple TD's, this bit reports whether this TD is the Start TD.
- 0 This TD is not the Start TD .....default
- 1 This TD is the Start TD

20-17 Reserved .....always reads 0
16 Disable CRC Generation .....default = 0
15 Chain Buffer .....default = 0
14-11 Reserved .....always reads 0
10-0 Tx Data Buffer Size .....default = 0
The transmit data buffer size for this descriptor. The total byte count of the entire frame will be stored in the last descriptor.

Offset 4B-48 – Tx Data Buffer Start Address.....RO

31-0 Tx Data Buffer Start Address

Offset 4F-4C – Tx Data Buffer Branch Address.....RO

31-4 Tx Data Buffer Branch Address
3-1 Reserved .....always reads 0
0 Tx Interrupt Enable
- 0 Issue interrupt for this packet.....default
- 1 No interrupt generated

Offset 6C – PHY Address (01h) .....RW

7-6 MII Management Polling Timer Interval (Polling PHY)
- 00 1024 MDC Clock Cycles ..... default
- 01 512 MDC Clock Cycles
- 10 128 MDC Clock Cycles
- 11 64 MDC Clock Cycles

MDC is an internal clock with a 960 ns cycle time.

5 Accelerate MDC Speed
- 0 Normal ..... default
- 1 4x Accelerated

4-0 Extended PHY Device Address..... default = 01h
Stored from EEPROM during power-up or EEPROM auto-reload but can be programmed by software

Offset 6D – MII Status (13h) .....RW

7 PHY Reset
- 0 PHY reset not asserted ..... default
- 1 PHY reset asserted

6-5 Reserved ..... always reads 0

4 PHY Option
- 0 PHY address updated from EEPROM
- 1 Use default PHY address of 0001h **.....default**

3 PHY Device Received Error
- 0 No MII error..... default
- 1 MII Error

2 Reserved ..... always reads 0

1 Link Failure
- 0 Link successful
- 1 Link unsuccessful (no connection)**.....default**

0 PHY Speed
- 0 100 Mb
- 1 10 Mb **.....default**

Offset 6E – Buffer Control 0 (00h) ..... RW

7-6 Reserved .....always reads 0

5-3 Rx FIFO Threshold Control
- 000 Determined by Offset 6 Rcv Ctrl Reg.... default
- ~000 Determined by bits 2-0 of this register

2-0 DMA Length
- 000 32 bytes 8 DW ..... default
- 001 64 bytes 16 DW
- 010 128 bytes 32 DW
- 011 256 bytes 64 DW
- 100 512 bytes 128 DW
- 101 1024 bytes 256 DW
- 11x Store & Forward

Offset 6F – Buffer Control 1 (00h) ..... RW

7-6 Reserved .....always reads 0

5-3 Tx FIFO Threshold Control
- 000 Determined by Rx7 Transmit Control ... default
- ~000 Determined by this register

2-0 Polling Interval Timer
This field determines the polling interval when TD / RD Auto-Polling is enabled (Rx09[3]=0).
- 000 4 PCI Clocks..... default
- 001 1 PCI Clock
- 010 2 PCI Clocks
- 011 8 PCI Clocks
- 100 16 PCI Clocks
- 101 32 PCI Clocks
- 110 64 PCI Clocks
- 111 128 PCI Clocks

Offset 70 – MII Management Port Command (00h).....RW

7 MII (PHY) Auto Polling
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable (polling interval determined by Rx6C[7:6])

6 PHY Read
Every time this bit is set to one, the PHY is read once. The address read is determined by Rx71[4:0] and the data is stored in Rx73-72.

5 PHY Write
Every time this bit is set to one, the PHY is written once. The address written is determined by Rx71[4:0] and the value in Rx73-72 will be written to the PHY.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

4 PHY Direct Programming Mode
- 0 Disable (bits 3-0 are ignored) (see bits 6-5) def
- 1 Enable (bits 6-5 are ignored) (see bits 2-0)

3 MDIO Output Enable Indicator

2 PHY Direct Programming Write Data Out
During direct programming (write), the value in this bit is written to the PHY every time bit-0 of this register (the "clock") toggles.

1 PHY Direct Programming Read Data In..... RO
During direct programming (read), every time the "clock" (bit-0) toggles, the value from the PHY is stored in this bit.

0 PHY Direct Programming Clock
This bit acts as the clock during direct reads from and direct writes to the PHY.

Offset 71 – MII Management Port Address (81h).....RW

7 Polling Status
- 0 Polling mechanism is busy (polling can't be initiated)
- 1 Polling mechanism is idle (polling can be initiated) **.....default**

6 Polling Type
- 0 Poll One Cycle ..... default
- 1 Auto polling – close the pause function at bit-5

5 Polling Complete
- 0 Polling not complete..... default
- 1 Polling complete (auto polling data ready)

4-0 MII Management Port Address Bits 4-0 ..def = 01h
This field contains the address of the PHY register to be read or written.

Offset 73-72 – PHY Data.....RW

After a PHY read, the data read from the PHY is stored in this register. For writes to the PHY, the data to be written is placed in this register.

Offset 74 – EEPROM Command / Status (00h)..... RW

7 EEPROM Program Complete.....RO, def = 0
Set when EEPROM loading is complete.

6 EEPROM Embedded Program Enable.....def = 0
When this bit is set, configuration data (in Rx6E, 6F, 74, 78, 79, 7A, and 7B) will start to be programmed into the EEPROM.

5 Dynamically Reload EEPROM Content .....def = 0
When this bit toggles, the Ethernet ID (Rx5-0) is reloaded from EEPROM.

4 EEPROM Direct Program Mode
- 0 Disable.....default
- 1 Enable (see bits 3-0)

3 EEPROM Direct Programming Chip Select
This bit must be set to allow proramming of the EEPROM using bits 2-0

2 EEPROM Direct Programming Clock
This bit acts as the clock for direct programming of the EEPROM.

1 EEPROM Direct Programming Read Data In . RO
During direct programming (read), the value in this bit is written to the EEPROM every time bit-2 of this register (the "clock") toggles.

0 EEPROM Direct Programming Wr Data Out
During direct programming (write), the value in this bit is written to the EEPROM every time bit-2 of this register (the "clock") toggles.

Offset 78 – EEPROM Control (00h) ..... RW

7 EEPROM Embedded & Direct Programming
- 0 Disable (EEPROM cannot be programmed) def
- 1 Enable (allow EEPROM to be programmed)

6 Extension Clock
- 0 Disable.....default
- 1 Enable (the clock to the EEPROM is sent prior to the start of data to allow more time for the EEPROM to return to the ready state)

5-0 Reserved .....always reads 0

Offset 79 – Configuration 1 (00h).....RW

7 Transmit Frame Queueing
- 0 Enable (frames from the PCI bus can be queued in the transmit FIFO – a maximum of 2 packets may be queued) ..... default
- 1 Disable

6 Data Parity Generation and Checking

This bit controls whether PCI parity is enabled.
- 0 Enable..... default
- 1 Disable

5 Memory-Read-Line Supported

This bit controls whether PCI Memory-Read-Line is supported.
- 0 Enable..... default
- 1 Disable

4 Transmit FIFO DMA Interleaved to Receiving FIFO DMA After 32 DW Transaction

This bit controls whether during a transmit, priority can be given to a receive transaction.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable (during a transmit, if a receive request is seen, the transmit is paused after 32 DW's and priority is given to the receive)

3 Receive FIFO DMA Interleaved to Transmitting FIFO DMA After 32 DW Transaction

This bit controls whether during a receive, priority can be given to a transmit transaction.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable (during a receive, if a transmit request is seen, the receive is paused after 32 DW's and priority is given to the transmit)

2 Memory Read Wait States (for ISA only)
- 0 None ..... default
- 1 Insert one wait state 2222

1 Memory Write Wait States s (for ISA only)
- 0 None ..... default
- 1 Insert one wait state 2222

0 Latency Timer

This bit controls whether PCI Delayed Transactions are enabled.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

Offset 7A – Configuration 2 (00h) ..... RW

7 Reserved .....always reads 0

6 Unused BootROM Address MA

This bit controls whether unused BootROM memory address bits are tied high.
- 0 Not tied high ..... default
- 1 Tied high

5 Delayed Transactions for BootROM Memory Read

This bit controls whether PCI delayed transactions are enabled.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

4-0 Reserved .....always reads 0

Offset 7B – Configuration 3 (00h) ..... RW

7 Memory Mapped I/O Access
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

6-4 Reserved (Do Not Program) .....default = 0

3 Backoff Algorithm
- 0 Fixed ..... default
- 1 Random

2 DEC Capture Effect Solution
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

1 AMD Capture Effect Solution
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

0 Backoff Algorithm Optional
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

Offset 80 – Miscellaneous 1 (00h).....RW

7-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3 Full Duplex Flow Control
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

2 Half Duplex Flow Control
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

1 Soft Timer 0 Status / Start
- 0 Timer Counting ..... default (write 0 after time out to start timer counting)
- 1 Timer Timed Out

0 Soft Timer 0 Enable
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable timer to count

Offset 81 – Miscellaneous 2 (00h).....RW

7 Reserved ..... always reads 0

6 Force Software Reset

Setting this bit resets the MAC. This bit functions differently from Rx09[7] in that when Rx09[7] is set, the MAC will reset only after all state machines are in idle mode (all on-going transactions have been completed). When this bit is set, the MAC will be reset regardless of the status of the state machines. This bit is used when Rx09[7] cannot force a reset due to issues with the state machines.
- 0 Normal ..... default
- 1 Force Reset

5 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0

4-1 Reserved ..... always reads 0

0 Soft Timer 1 Enable
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable timer to count

Offset 83 – Sticky Hardware Control (00h)..... RW

7 Legacy WOL Status (for software reference) ... RO

This bit reports whether legacy WOL is supported. The value is usually derived from a jumper switch.
- 0 Disable ..... default
- 1 Enable

6-4 Reserved ..... always reads 0

3 Legacy WOL Status ..... RO

This bit is set when there is a legacy WOL event.
- 0 No legacy WOL event occurred ..... default
- 1 Legacy WOL event occurred

2 Legacy WOL Enable

This bit controls whether legacy WOL is a wake event.
- 0 Disable (if a wake event is detected (bit-3 = 1), PME# will not be asserted)..... default
- 1 Enable (if a wake event is detected (bit-3 = 1), PME# will be asserted)

1-0 Sticky DS Shadow

This field reports the current power management state of the device.
- 00 D0 State ..... default
- 01 D1 State
- 10 D2 State
- 11 D3 State

Offset 84 – MII Interrupt Status (00h).....RWC

The bits in this register correspond to bits in the MII Interrupt Mask register (Rx86). An interrupt is generated when corresponding bits in both registers equal one.

7-4 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0
3 Transmit Data Write Buffer Queue Race.... def = 0
Set when write back race for transmit occurs. Write back race occurs when a new write back is generated with 2 write backs already queued.
2 Reserved ..... always reads 0
1 Soft Timer 1 Timeout..... default = 0
0 Soft Timer 0 Timeout..... default = 0
All bits above: write 0 to clear the interrupt

Offset 86 – MII Interrupt Mask (00h).....RW

The bits in this register correspond to bits in the MII Interrupt Status register (Rx84). An interrupt is generated when corresponding bits in both registers equal one.

7-4 Reserved (Do Not Program)..... default = 0
3 Transmit Shutdown Interrupt Mask
2 Reserved ..... always reads 0
1 Soft Timer 1 Interrupt Mask
0 Soft Timer 0 Interrupt Mask
All bits above:
0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable

Offset 8D-8C – Flash Address..... RW

This register stores the address that is read from or written to when reading or configuring the BootROM.

15-0 Flash Address [15:0].....default = 0

Offset 8F – Flash Write Data Out ..... RW

This register stores the data that is written to the BootROM.

7-0 Flash Write Data Out.....default = 0

Offset 90 – Flash Read / Write Command..... RW

7-2 Reserved .....always reads 0
1 Boot ROM Embedded Write Command.....def = 0
Setting this bit initiates a write transaction (data in Rx8F will be written to the address specified in Rx8D-8C).
0 Boot ROM Embedded Read Command.....def = 0
Setting this bit initiates a read transaction (data in the address specified in Rx8D-8C will be read and stored in Rx91).

Offset 91 – Flash Write Data In..... RO

This register stores the data that is read from the BootROM.

7-0 Flash Write Data In.....default = 0

Offset 93 – Flash Checksum (00h)..... RW

This register stores the checksum from the BootROM after programming.

7-0 EEPROM Checksum .....default = 0

Offset 95-94 – Suspend Mode MII Address (0000h).....RW

15-0 MII Address During Suspend ..... default = 0
Functionally, this field is the same as Rx71[4:0]. However, during suspend state this field is used because Rx71[4:0] cannot be accessed.

Offset 96 – Suspend Mode PHY Address (00h) .....RW

7-0 PHY Address During Suspend..... default = 0
This field stores the address of the PHY to access during suspend state. This field selects the PHY while Rx95-94 selects the specific register within the PHY.

Offset 99-98 – Pause Timer (0000h) ..... RW

7-0 Pause Timer Value .....def = 0
This field is used for full duplex flow control. When the Receive FIFO is nearly full, The transmitter can send a pause frame to the transmitting side (generally a switch) to request a pause. The length of pause time is determined by this field.

Offset 9A – Pause Status (00h)..... RW

7-1 Reserved .....always reads 0
0 Pause Status
0 Not paused ..... default
1 Paused

Offset 9D-9C – Soft Timer 0 (0000h)..... RW

7-0 Soft Timer 0 Count Value.....default = 0
This field reports the count value of soft timer 0.

Offset 9F-9E – Soft Timer 1 (0000h) ..... RW

7-0 Soft Timer 1 Count Value.....default = 0
This field reports the count value of soft timer 1.

Offset A0 – Wake On LAN Control Set (00h).....RW
Offset A4 – Wake On LAN Control Clear (00h) .....RW

7 **Link Off Detected** (determines whether the system wakes up from link off detection)
6 **Link On Detected** (determines whether the system wakes up from link on detection)
5 **Magic Packet Filter** (determines whether the system wakes up when a Magic Packet is detected)
4 **Unicast Filter** (determines whether the system wakes up when a Unicast Packet is detected)
3 **CRC3 Pattern Match Filtering** (determines whether the system wakes up when packet matching CRC3 pattern is detected)
2 **CRC2 Pattern Match Filtering** (determines whether the system wakes up when packet matching CRC2 pattern is detected)
1 **CRC1 Pattern Match Filtering** (determines whether the system wakes up when packet matching CRC1 pattern is detected)
0 **CRC0 Pattern Match Filtering** (determines whether the system wakes up when packet matching CRC0 pattern is detected)

All bits above:
0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable

Offset A1 – Power Configuration Set (00h).....RW
Offset A5 – Power Configuration Clear (00h) .....RW

7-6 **Reserved** ..... always reads 0
5 **WOL Type**
0 Driven by Level..... default
1 Driven By Pulse
4 **Legacy WOL**
0 Disable ..... default
1 Enable
3-2 **Reserved** ..... always reads 0
1-0 **Reserved (Do Not Program)**..... default = 0

Offset A3 – Wake On LAN Configuration Set (00h) ..... RW
Offset A7 – Wake On LAN Configuration Clear (00h) . RW

7 **Force Power Management Enable over PME Enable Bit (Legacy Use Only)**
6 **Full Duplex During Suspend**
5 **Accept Multicast During Suspend**
This bit controls whether multicast packets are accepted during suspend state. Whether a multicast packet will actually wake up the system depends on whether the packet is a type of packet set to wake up the system, as determined by RxA0[5:0].
4 **Accept Broadcast During Suspend**
This bit controls whether broadcast packets are accepted during suspend state. Whether a broadcast packet will actually wake up the system depends on whether the packet is a type of packet set to wake up the system, as determined by RxA0[5:0].
3 **MDC Acceleration**
2 **Extend Clock During Suspend**
When enabled, the clock to the PHY is sent prior to the start of data to allow more time for the PHY to return to ready state.
1-0 **Reserved** .....always reads 0

All bits above:
0 Disable.....default
1 Enable

Offset B3-B0 – Pattern CRC0..... RW
127-0 **CRC0 Pattern** .....default = 0

Offset B7-B4 – Pattern CRC1..... RW
127-0 **CRC1 Pattern** .....default = 0

Offset BB-B8 – Pattern CRC2 ..... RW
127-0 **CRC2 Pattern** .....default = 0

Offset BF-BC – Pattern CRC3 ..... RW
127-0 **CRC3 Pattern** .....default = 0

Offset CF-C0 – Byte Mask 0 ..... RW

Offset DF-D0 – Byte Mask 1 ..... RW

Offset EF-E0 – Byte Mask 2..... RW

Offset FF-F0 – Byte Mask 3 ..... RW

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTIONS

Power Management

POwer Management Subsystem Overview

The power management function of the VT8233 is indicated in the following block diagram:

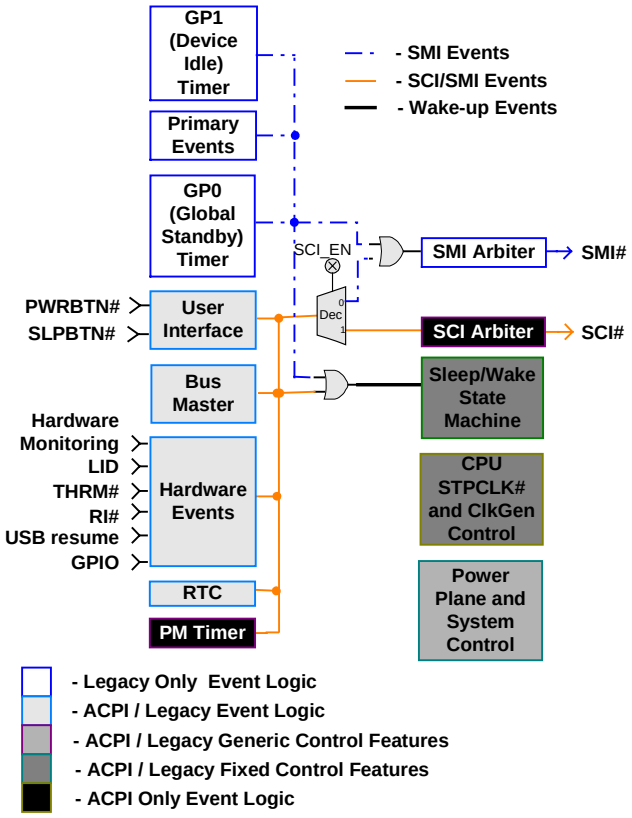


Figure 3. Power Management Subsystem Block Diagram

Refer to ACPI Specification v1.0 and APM specification v1.2 for additional information.

Processor Bus States

The VT8233 supports the complete set of C0 to C3 processor states as specified in the Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) specification (and defined in ACPI I/O space Registers 10-15):

C0: Normal Operation

C1: CPU Halt (controlled by software).

C2: Stop Clock. Entered when the Processor Level 2 register (PMIO Rx14) is read. The STPCLK# signal is asserted to put the processor in the Stop Grant State. The CPUSTP# signal is not asserted so that host clocks remain running. To exit this state, the chip negates STPCLK#.

C3: Suspend. Entered when the Processor Level 3 register (PMIO Rx15) is read. In addition to STPCLK# assertion as in the C2 state, the SUSST1# (suspend status 1) signal is asserted to tell the north bridge to switch to "Suspend DRAM Refresh" mode based on the 32KHz suspend clock (SUSCLK) provided by the VT8233. If the Host Stop bit is enabled, then CPUSTP# is also asserted to stop clock generation and put the CPU into Stop Clock State. To exit this state, the chip negates CPUSTP# and allows time for the processor PLL to lock. Then the SUSST1# and STPCLK# signals are negated to resume to normal operation.

During normal operation, two mechanisms are provided to modulate CPU execution and control power consumption by throttling the duty cycle of STPCLK#:

a. Setting the Throttle Enable bit to 1, the duty cycle defined in Throttle Duty Cycle (PMIO Rx10) is used.

b. THRM# pin assertion enables automatic clock throttling with duty cycle pre-configured in THRM# Duty Cycle (PCI configuration Rx4C).

System Suspend States and Power Plane Control

There are three power planes inside the VT8233. The first power plane (VCCS) is always on unless turned off by the mechanical switch. The second power plane (VCC) is controlled by chip output SUSC# (also called "PSON"). The third plane (VCCRTC) is powered by the combination of the VCCS and the external battery (VBAT) for the integrated real time clock. Most of the circuitry inside the VT8233 is powered by VCC. The amount of logic powered by VCCS is very small; its main function is to control the supply of VCC and other power planes. VCCRTC is always on unless both the mechanical switch and VBAT are removed.

The VT8233 supports multiple system suspend states by configuring the Sleep Type field of ACPI I/O space (PMIO) register Rx5-4:

a) **POS (Power On Suspend):** Most devices in the system remain powered. The host bus is put into an equivalent of the C3 state. In particular, the CPU is put into the Stop Grant State or Stop Clock State depending on the setting of the Host Stop bit. SUSST1# is asserted to tell the north bridge to switch to "Suspend DRAM Refresh" mode based on the 32KHz SUSCLK provided by the VT8233. As to the PCI bus, setting the PCLK Run bit to 0 enables the CLKRUN protocol defined in the PCI Mobile Design Guide. That is, the PCKRUN# pin will be de-activated after the PCI bus is idle for 26 clocks. Any PCI bus masters including the north bridge may resume PCI clock operation by pulling the PCKRUN# pin low. During the PCKRUN# de-activation period, the PCISTP# pin may be activated to disable the output of the PCI clock generator if the PCI Stop bit is enabled. When the system resumes from POS, the VT8233 can optionally resume without resetting the system, can reset the processor only, or can reset the entire system. When no reset is performed, the chip only needs to wait for the clock synthesizer and processor PLL to lock before the system is resumed, which typically takes 20ms.

b) **STR (Suspend to RAM):** Power is removed from most of the system except the system DRAM. Power is supplied to the suspend refresh logic in the north bridge (e.g., VSUS25 of the VT8633) and the suspend logic of the VT8233 (VSUS33).

c) **STD (Suspend to Disk, also called Soft-off):** Power is removed from most of the system except the suspend logic of VT8233 (VSUS33).

d) **Mechanical Off:** This is not a suspend state. All power in the system is removed except the RTC battery.

The suspend state is entered by setting the Sleep Enable bit to 1. Three power plane control signals (SUSA#, SUSB# and SUSC#) are provided to turn off more system power planes as the system moves to deeper power-down states, i.e., from normal operation to POS (only SUSA# asserted), to STR (both SUSA# and SUSB# asserted), and to STD (all three SUS# signals asserted). In particular, the assertion of SUSC# can be used to turn off the VCC supply to the VT8233.

One additional suspend status indicator (SUSST1#) is provided to inform the north bridge and the rest of the system of the processor and system suspend states. SUSST1# is asserted when the system enters the suspend state or the processor enters the C3 state. SUSST1# is connected to the north bridge to switch between normal and suspend-DRAM-refresh modes.

General Purpose I/O Ports

As ACPI compliant hardware, the VT8233 includes PWRBTN#, SLPBTN#, and RI# pins to implement power button, sleep button, and ring indicator functionality, respectively. Furthermore, the VT8233 offers many general-purpose I/O ports with the following capabilities:

- **I^2C / SMB Support**
- **Thermal Detect**
- **Notebook Lid Open / Close Detect**
- **Battery Low Detect**
- **Twelve General Purpose Input Ports** (multiplexed with other functions).
- **Nineteen General Purpose Output Ports** (1 dedicated and 18 multiplexed with other functions)
- **Four General Purpose Input / Output Ports** (multiplexed with other functions)

In addition, the VT8233 provides an external dedicated SMI pin (EXTSMI#). The external SMI input can be programmed to trigger an SCI or SMI at both the rising and falling edges of the corresponding input signal. Software can check the status of the input pin and take appropriate actions.

Power Management Events

Three types of power management events are supported:

1) **ACPI-required Fixed Events** defined in the PM1a Status and PM1a Enable registers. These events can trigger either SCI or SMI depending on the SCI Enable bit:
   - PWRBTN# Triggering
   - RTC Alarm
   - Sleep Button
   - ACPI Power Management Timer Carry (always SCI)
   - BIOS Release (always SCI)

2) **ACPI-aware General Purpose Function Events** defined in the GP Status and GP SCI Enable, and GP SMI Enable registers. These events can trigger either SCI or SMI depending on the setting of individual SMI and SCI enable bits:
   - External SMI triggering
   - USB Resume
   - Ring Indicator (RI#)
   - Battery Low Detect (BATLOW#)
   - Notebook Lid Open/Close Detect (LID)
   - Thermal Detect (THRM#)

3) **Generic Global Events** defined in the Global Status and Global Enable registers. These registers are mainly used for SMI:
   - PCI Bus Clock Run Resume
   - Primary Interrupt Occurance
   - GP0 and GP1 Timer Time Out
   - Secondary Event Timer Time Out
   - Occurrence of Primary Events
     (defined in the Primary Activity Status and Primary Activity Enable registers)
   - Legacy USB accesses (keyboard and mouse)
   - Software SMI

System and Processor Resume Events

Depending on the system suspend state, different features can be enabled to resume the system. There are two classes of resume events:

a) VSUS-based events. Event logic resides in the VSUS plane and thus can resume the system from any suspend state. Such events include PWRBTN#, RI#, BATLOW#, LID, SMBus resume event, RTC alarm, EXTSMI#, and GP1 (EXTSMI1#).

b) VCC-Based Events. Event logic resides in the VCC plane and thus can only resume the system from the POS state. Such events include the ACPI PM timer, USB resume, and EXTSMIn#.

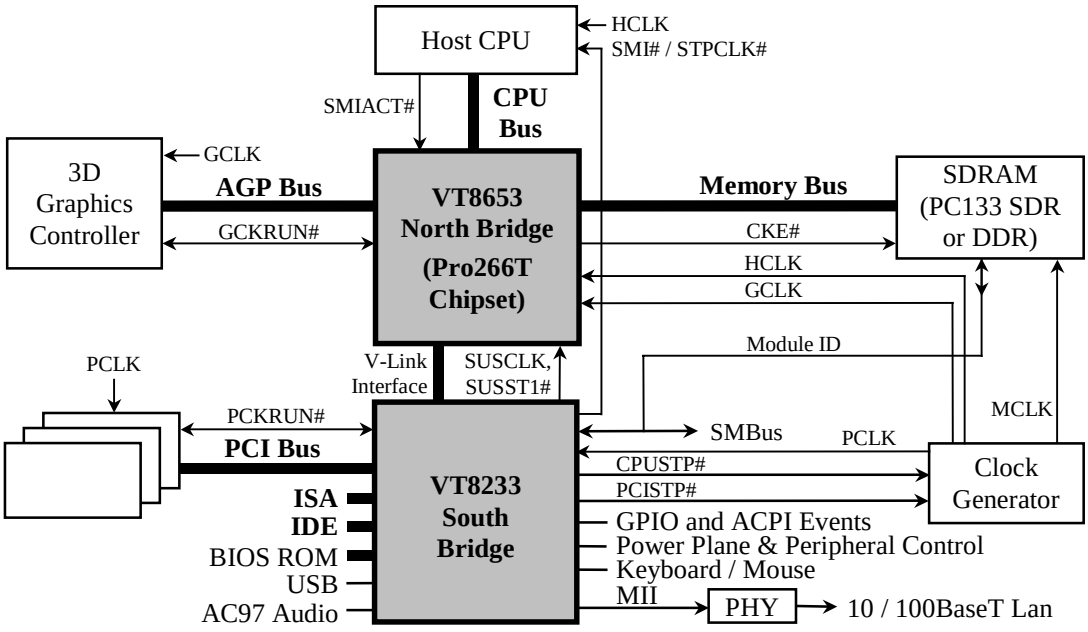


Figure 4. System Block Diagram Using the VT8633 North Bridge

Legacy Power Management Timers

In addition to the ACPI power management timer, the VT8233 includes the following four legacy power management timers:

GP0 Timer: general purpose timer with primary event

GP1 Timer: general purpose timer with peripheral event reload

Secondary Event Timer: to monitor secondary events

Conserve Mode Timer: Hardware-controlled return to standby

The normal sequence of operations for a general purpose timer (GP0 or GP1) is to

1) First program the time base and timer value of the initial count (register GP Timer Count).
2) Then activate counting by setting the GP0 Start or GP1 Start bit to one: the timer will start with the initial count and count down towards 0.
3) When the timer counts down to zero, an SMI will be generated if enabled (GP0 Timeout Enable and GP1 Timeout Enable in the Global Enable register) with status recorded (GP0 Tomeout Status and GP1 Timeout Status in the Global Status register).
4) Each timer can also be programmed to reload the initial count and restart counting automatically after counting down to 0. This feature is not used in standard VIA BIOS.

The GP0 and GP1 timers can be used just as the general purpose timers described above. However, they can also be programmed to reload the initial count by system primary events or peripheral events thus used as primary event (global standby) timer and peripheral timer, respectively. The secondary event timer is solely used to monitor secondary events.

System Primary and Secondary Events

Primary system events are distinguished in the Primary Activity Status and Primary Activity Enable registers:

Bit	Event	Trigger
7	**Keyboard Access**	I/O port 60h
6	**Serial Port Access**	I/O ports 3F8h-3FFh, 2F8h-2FFh, 3E8h-3EFh, or 2E8h-2EFh
5	**Parallel Port Access**	I/O ports 378h-37Fh or 278h-27Fh
4	**Video Access**	I/O ports 3B0h-3DFh or memory A/B segments
3	**IDE/Floppy Access**	I/O ports 1F0h-1F7h, 170h-177h, or 3F5h
2	**Reserved**	
1	**Primary Interrupts**	Each channel of the interrupt controller can be programmed to be a primary or secondary interrupt
0	**ISA Master/DMA Activity**	

Each category can be enabled as a primary event by setting the corresponding bit of the Primary Activity Enable register to 1. If enabled, the occurrence of the primary event reloads the GP0 timer if the Primary Activity GP0 Enable bit is also set to 1. The cause of the timer reload is recorded in the corresponding bit of Primary Activity Status register while the timer is reloaded. If no enabled primary event occurs during the count down, the GP0 timer will time out (count down to 0) and the system can be programmed (setting the GP0 Timeout Enable bit in the Global Enable register to one) to trigger an SMI to switch the system to a power down mode.

The VT8233 distinguishes two kinds of interrupt requests as far as power management is concerned: the primary and secondary interrupts. Like other primary events, the occurrence of a primary interrupt demands that the system be restored to full processing capability. Secondary interrupts, however, are typically used for housekeeping tasks in the background unnoticeable to the user. The VT8233 allows each channel of interrupt request to be declared as either primary, secondary, or ignorable in the Primary IRQ Channel and Secondary IRQ Channel registers. Secondary interrupts are the only system secondary events defined in the VT8233.

Like primary events, primary interrupts can be made to reload the GP0 timer by setting the PIRQ Enable bit to 1. Secondary interrupts do not reload the GP0 timer. Therefore the GP0 timer will time out and the SMI routine can put the system into power down mode if no events other than secondary interrupts are happening periodically in the background.

Primary events can be programmed to trigger an SMI (setting of the Primary Activity Enable bit). Typically, this SMI triggering is turned off during normal system operation to avoid degrading system performance. Triggering is turned on by the SMI routine before entering the power down mode so that the system may be returned to normal operation at the occurrence of primary events. At the same time, the GP0 timer is reloaded and the count down process is restarted.

Peripheral Events

Primary and secondary events define system events in general and the response is typically expressed in terms of system events. Individual peripheral events can also be monitored by the VT8233 through the GP1 timer. The following four categories of peripheral events are distinguished (via the GP Reload Enable register):

Bit-7 **Keyboard Access**
Bit-6 **Serial Port Access**
Bit-4 **Video Access**
Bit-3 **IDE/Floppy Access**

The four categories are subsets of the primary events as defined in Primary Activity Enable and the occurrence of these events can be checked through a common register Primary Activity Status. As a peripheral timer, GP1 can be used to monitor one (or more than one) of the above four device types by programming the corresponding bit to one and the other bits to zero. Time out of the GP1 timer indicates no activity of the corresponding device type and appropriate action can be taken as a result.

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Absolute Maximum Ratings

Symbol	Parameter	Min	Max	Unit	Comment
T_S	Storage Temperature	–55	125	ºC	
T_C	Case Operating Temperature	0	85	ºC	
V_{CC}	Core Voltage	–0.5	2.625	Volts	2.5V (VT8233A is 3.3V core)
V_{CC25}	2.5V I/O Voltage	–0.5	V_{CC} + 0.25	Volts	2.5V
V_{CCVK}	V-Link Compensation Voltage	–0.5	V_{CC} + 0.25	Volts	2.5V
V_{CCPLL}	PLL Voltage	–0.5	V_{CC} + 0.25	Volts	2.5V
V_{CCRAM}	LAN RAM Voltage	–0.5	V_{CC} + 0.25	Volts	2.5V
V_{CC33}	3.3V I/O Voltage	–0.5	3.6	Volts	3.3V
V_{SUS33}	Suspend Voltage	–0.5	V_{CC33} + 0.3	Volts	3.3V
V_{CCUSB}	USB Voltage	–0.5	V_{CC33} + 0.3	Volts	3.3V
V_{CCMII}	LAN MII Voltage	–0.5	V_{CC33} + 0.3	Volts	3.3V
V_{BAT}	Battery Voltage	–0.5	V_{CC33} + 0.3	Volts	3.3V
V_{LREF}	V-Link Reference Voltage	–0.5	V_{CC25} * 0.38	Volts	0.9V
	Input voltage (3.3V-only inputs)	–0.5	V_{CC33} + 0.3	Volts	FERR#, USBCLK, PWRBTN#, EXTSMI#, BATLOW#, SMBCK1-2, SMBDT1-2

Note: Stress above the conditions listed may cause permanent damage to the device. Functional operation of this device should be restricted to the conditions described under operating conditions.

DC Characteristics

T_C = 0 - 85ºC, $V_{CC33} = V_{SUS33} = V_{CCUSB} = V_{CCMII}$ = 3.3V ±5%, V_{BAT} = 3.3V +0.3 / –1.3V

$V_{CC} = V_{CC25} = V_{CCVK} = V_{CCRAM} = V_{CCPLL}$ = 2.5V ±5%, V_{LREF} = 0.9V ±5%, GND = 0V

Symbol	Parameter	Min	Max	Unit	Condition
V_{IL}	Input low voltage	–0.5	0.8	V	
V_{IH}	Input high voltage	2.0	V_{CC33}+0.3	V	
V_{OL}	Output low voltage	–	0.45	V	I_{OL} = 4.0mA
V_{OH}	Output high voltage	2.4	–	V	I_{OH} = -1.0mA
I_{IL}	Input leakage current	–	±10	uA	$0 < V_{IN} < V_{CC}$
I_{OZ}	Tristate leakage current	–	±20	uA	$0.45 < V_{OUT} < V_{CC}$

Power Requirements

Symbol	Parameter	Typ	Max	Unit	Condition
I_{CC}	Power supply current – Core (2.5V)			mA	At max operating frequency
I_{CC25}	Power supply current – I/O (2.5V)			mA	At max operating frequency
I_{CC33}	Power supply current – I/O (3.3V)			mA	At max operating frequency
I_{SUS33}	Power supply current – Suspend (3.3V)			mA	At max operating frequency
I_{CCUSB}	Power supply current – USB (3.3V)			mA	At max operating frequency
I_{CCMII}	Power supply current – LAN (3.3V)			mA	At max operating frequency
I_{CCRAM}	Power supply current – RAM (2.5V)			mA	At max operating frequency
I_{CCVK}	Power supply current – V-Link (2.5V)			mA	At max operating frequency
I_{CCPLL}	Power supply current – PLL (2.5V)			mA	At max operating frequency
I_{VLREF}	Power supply current – 0.9V Reference			**uA**	At max operating frequency
I_{BAT}	Power supply current – RTC Battery		5	**uA**	At max operating frequency
P_{MAX}	Power dissipation		2.5	W	At max operating frequency

PACKAGE MECHANICAL SPECIFICATIONS

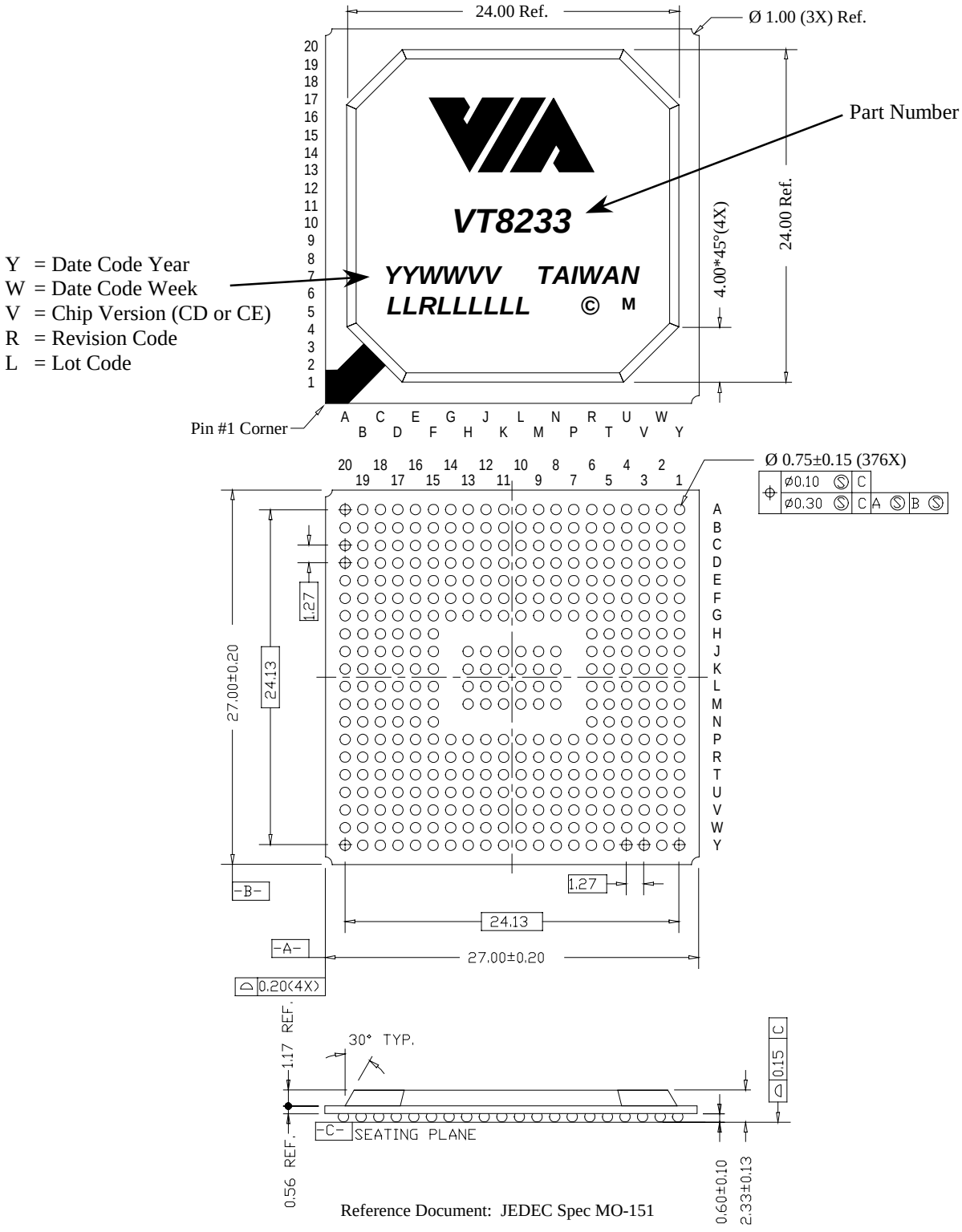


Figure 5. Mechanical Specifications – 376 Pin Ball Grid Array Package